

**NOTICE OF SALE, OFFICIAL BID FORM  
AND  
PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

**\$9,115,000\***

**CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
(A Political Subdivision of the State of Texas Located in  
Guadalupe, Comal and Bexar Counties, Texas)**

**GENERAL OBLIGATION AND REFUNDING BONDS,  
SERIES 2018**

**Bids due  
Tuesday, October 23, 2018  
at  
11:00 A.M. Central Time**

---

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" in the Official Notice of Sale.

This Official Notice of Sale does not alone constitute an invitation for bids but is merely notice of sale of the Bonds defined and described herein. The invitation for bids on the Bonds is being made by means of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form and the Preliminary Official Statement.

## OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE

**\$9,115,000\***

**CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS**

**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Guadalupe, Comal and Bexar Counties, Texas)  
GENERAL OBLIGATION AND REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2018**

**BONDS OFFERED FOR SALE AT COMPETITIVE BID:** The City Council (the "City Council") of the City of Schertz, Texas (the "City" or the "Issuer") is offering for sale at competitive bid its \$9,115,000\* General Obligation and Refunding Bonds, Series 2018 (the "Bonds").

**BIDS BY INTERNET:** Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by electronic media, as described below, by 11:00 A.M., Central Time, on October 23, 2018. Bidders submitting a bid by internet **shall not be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award.** Any prospective bidder that intends to submit an electronic bid must submit its electronic bid via the facilities of the i-Deal, LLC Parity System ("PARITY") and should, as a courtesy, register with PARITY by 9:00 A.M., Central Time, on October 23, 2018 indicating their intent to submit a bid by internet.

In the event of a malfunction in the electronic bidding process, bidders may submit their bids by email to [mmcliney@samcocapital.com](mailto:mmcliney@samcocapital.com). If there is a malfunction of the electronic bidding process and a bidder submits a bid via email, please call 210-832-9760 to notify the Financial Advisor (defined below) of the incoming bid. Any bid received after the scheduled time for their receipt will not be accepted.

The official time for the receipt of bids shall be the time maintained by PARITY. All electronic bids shall be deemed to incorporate the provisions of this Official Notice of Sale, Official Bid Form and the Preliminary Official Statement. To the extent that any instructions or directions set forth in PARITY conflict with this Official Notice of Sale, the terms of this Official Notice of Sale shall control. For further information about the PARITY System, potential bidders may contact PARITY, c/o Ipreo Holdings LLC, 1359 Broadway, New York, New York 10018, 212-849-5021.

An electronic bid made through the facilities of PARITY shall be deemed an irrevocable offer to purchase the Bonds on the terms provided in this Official Notice of Sale, and shall be binding upon the bidder as if made by a signed sealed bid delivered to the City. The City shall not be responsible for any malfunction or mistake made by, or as a result of the use of PARITY, the use of such facilities being at the sole risk of the prospective bidder.

**OPENING OF BIDS:** Bids will be opened and publicly read at 11:00 A.M. Central Time, on Tuesday, October 23, 2018, following which the bids will be evaluated by SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. (the "Financial Advisor") and the City Council shall provide final approval of the award at a City Council meeting later that evening. The Mayor of the City or his representative shall award the Bonds as described in the section entitled "AWARD AND SALE OF THE BONDS" below.

**AWARD AND SALE OF THE BONDS:** By 12:00 P.M. (noon) Central Time, on the date set for receipt of bids, the Mayor of the City or his representative shall award the Bonds to **the low qualified bidder (the "Winning Bidder")**, as described in the section entitled "CONDITIONS OF SALE – Basis of Award" herein subject to final approval of the City Council which will take action to adopt an ordinance (the "Ordinance") authorizing the issuance and awarding sale of the Bonds or will reject all bids promptly at a scheduled meeting to commence at 6:00 P.M. Central Time on Tuesday, October 23, 2018. The City reserves the right to reject any or all bids and to waive any irregularities, except time of filing.

\*Preliminary, subject to change based on bid structures. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.

## THE BONDS

**DESCRIPTION OF CERTAIN TERMS OF THE BONDS:** The Bonds will be dated October 15, 2018 (the “Dated Date”) with interest to accrue from the Dated Date and be payable initially on February 1, 2019, and semiannually on each February 1 and August 1 thereafter until the earlier of stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered Bonds in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”), New York, New York. DTC will act as securities depository (the “Securities Depository”). Book-entry interests in the Bonds will be made available for purchase in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Bonds (“Beneficial Owners”) will not receive physical delivery of Bonds representing their interest in the Bonds purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Bonds, the principal of and interest on the Bonds will be payable by UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas, as Paying Agent/Registrar, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its Participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. (See “BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM” in the Official Statement.) The Bonds will be stated to mature on February 1 in each of the following years in the following amounts:

### MATURITY SCHEDULE (Due February 1)

<u>Stated Maturity</u>	<u>Principal Amount*</u>	<u>Stated Maturity</u>	<u>Principal Amount*</u>
2019	\$165,000	2027	\$275,000
2020	1,005,000	2028	585,000
2021	965,000	2029	500,000
2022	625,000	2030	515,000
2023	655,000	2031	535,000
2024	715,000	2032	555,000
2025	715,000	2033	575,000
2026	730,000		

**ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS:** The City reserves the right to increase or decrease the principal (maturity) amount of any maturity of the Bonds, including the elimination of a maturity or maturities; provided, however, that the aggregate principal (denominational) amount of the Bonds shall not exceed \$9,115,000\*. Notice of any such changes shall be given to the successful bidder as soon as practicable following the notification of award, as described below, and this Notice of Sale may be amended at the sole discretion of the City to reflect such increase or decrease. The City will attempt to maintain total per bond underwriting spread when adjusting maturities. No such adjustment will have the effect of altering the basis upon which the best bid is determined. The successful bidder may not withdraw its bids or change the rates bid or any initial reoffering prices as a result of any changes made to the principal (denominational) amounts.

**SERIAL BONDS AND/OR TERM BONDS:** Bidders may provide that all of the Bonds be issued as serial maturities or may provide that any two or more consecutive annual principal amounts be combined into one or more term bonds, not to exceed three term bonds (the “Term Bonds”).

**MANDATORY SINKING FUND REDEMPTION:** If the Winning Bidder designates principal amounts to be combined into one or more Term Bonds, each such Term Bond will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption commencing on February 1 of the first year which has been combined to form such Term Bond and continuing on February 1 in each year thereafter until the stated maturity date of that Term Bond. The amount redeemed in any year will be equal to the principal amount for such year set forth in the table above under the caption “MATURITY SCHEDULE”. Bonds to be redeemed in any year by mandatory sinking fund redemption will be redeemed at par and will be selected by lot from among the Bonds then subject to redemption. The City, at its option, may credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement Term Bonds of the maturity then subject to redemption which have been purchased and canceled by the City or have been optionally redeemed and not theretofore applied as a credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement.

**OPTIONAL REDEMPTION:** The City reserves the right, at its option, to redeem the Bonds maturing on or after February 1, 2029, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on February 1, 2028, or any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption as further described in the Official Statement.

**SECURITY FOR PAYMENT:** The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas (the “State”), including Chapters 1207, 1251 and 1331, as amended, Texas Government Code, the City’s Home Rule Charter, and an ordinance (the “Ordinance”) to be adopted by the City Council on October 23, 2018, the date of sale of the Bonds, and are payable from an annual ad valorem tax levied, within the limits prescribed by law, on all taxable property located within the City. (See “THE BONDS - Security for Payment of the Bonds” in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

**OTHER TERMS AND COVENANTS:** Other terms of the Ordinance and the various covenants of the City contained in the Ordinance are described in the Official Statement, to which reference is made for all purposes.

**SUCCESSOR PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR:** The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas. In the Ordinance, the City covenants to provide a Paying Agent/Registrar at all times while the Bonds are outstanding, and any Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the City shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States and any state and duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. The Paying Agent/Registrar will maintain the Security Register containing the names and addresses of the registered owners of the Bonds.

In the Ordinance, the City retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Paying Agent/Registrar is replaced by the City, the new Paying Agent/Registrar shall accept the previous Paying Agent/Registrar’s records and act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar, selected at the sole discretion of the City, shall be qualified as described in the Preliminary Official Statement. Upon a change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the City agrees to promptly cause written notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid.

\*Preliminary, subject to change

## CONDITIONS OF SALE

**TYPES OF BIDS AND INTEREST RATES:** The Bonds will be sold in one block, on an "All or None" basis, and at a price that produces a cash premium that results in a dollar price of not less than 102% nor greater than 107%, plus accrued interest from the Dated Date (defined herein) of the Bonds. **No bid producing a cash premium on the Bonds that results in a dollar price of less than 102% nor greater than 107% will be considered; provided, however, that any bid is subject to adjustment as described under the caption "THE BONDS-ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" which adjustment could result in the price of the Bonds or the bidders premium to exceed the parameters provided above.** Bidders are invited to name the rate(s) of interest to be borne by the Bonds, provided that each rate bid must be in a multiple of 1/8 of 1% or 1/20 of 1% and the net effective interest rate for the Bonds (calculated in the manner required by Chapter 1204, as amended, Texas Government Code) must not exceed 15%. The highest rate bid may not exceed the lowest rate bid by more than 3% in rate. No limitation is imposed upon bidders as to the number of rates or changes which may be used. All Bonds of one stated maturity must bear one and the same rate. No bids involving supplemental interest rates will be considered. Each bidder shall state in its bid the total interest cost in dollars and the net effective interest rate determined hereby, which shall be considered informative only and not as a part of the bid.

**BASIS OF AWARD:** The sale of the Bonds will be awarded to the bidder making a bid that conforms to the specifications herein (the "Winning Bidder" or "Purchaser") and which produces the lowest True Interest Cost (defined herein) rate to the City. The "True Interest Cost" rate is that rate which, when used to compute the total present value as of the Dated Date of all debt service payments on the Bonds on the basis of semi-annual compounding, produces an amount equal to the sum of the par value of the Bonds plus the premium bid, (but not interest accrued from the Dated Date to the date of their initial delivery to the Purchaser). In the event of a bidder's error in interest cost rate calculations, the interest rates, and premium, set forth in the Official Bid Form will be considered as the intended bid.

In order to provide the City with information required to enable it to comply with certain conditions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date of initial delivery of the Bonds (the "Code"), relating to the excludability of interest on the Bonds from the gross income of their owners, the Purchaser will be required to complete, execute, and deliver to the City (on or before the date of initial delivery of the Bonds) a certification as to their initial offering prices of the Bonds (the "Issue Price Certificate") substantially in the form and to the effect attached hereto or accompanying this Official Notice of Sale. (See "CONDITIONS OF SALE - ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" herein.)

### **ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE:**

(a) The Winning Bidder shall assist the City in establishing the issue price of the Bonds and shall execute and deliver to the City by the Delivery Date an "issue price" or similar certificate setting forth the reasonably expected initial offering price to the public, together with the supporting pricing wires or equivalent communications, such issue price certificate substantially in the form attached hereto, with such modifications as may be appropriate or necessary, in the reasonable judgment of the Winning Bidder, the City, and Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, the City's Bond Counsel (but not to the extent that would preclude the establishment of issue price of the Bonds under applicable federal regulations). All actions to be taken by the City under this Official Notice of Sale to establish the issue price of the Bonds may be taken on behalf of the City by the City's Financial Advisor and any notice or report to be provided to the City may be provided to the City's Financial Advisor.

(b) The City intends that the provisions of Treasury Regulation Section 1.148-1(f)(3)(i) (defining "competitive sale" for purposes of establishing the issue price of the Bonds) will apply to the initial sale of the Bonds (the "competitive sale requirements") because:

- (1) the City shall disseminate this Official Notice of Sale to potential underwriters (defined below) in a manner that is reasonably designed to reach potential underwriters;
- (2) all bidders shall have an equal opportunity to bid;
- (3) the City may receive bids from at least three underwriters of municipal bonds who have established industry reputations for underwriting new issuances of municipal bonds; and
- (4) the City anticipates awarding the sale of the Bonds to the bidder who submits a firm offer to purchase the Bonds at the highest price (or lowest interest cost), as set forth in this Official Notice of Sale.

Any bid submitted pursuant to this Official Notice of Sale shall be considered a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds, as specified in the bid.

(c) In the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied, the City shall so advise the Winning Bidder. In such event, the City intends to treat the initial offering price to the public (defined below) as of the sale date (defined below) of each maturity of the Bonds as the issue price of that maturity (the "hold-the-offering-price rule"). The City shall promptly advise the Winning Bidder, at or before the time of award of the Bonds, if the competitive sale requirements were not satisfied, in which case the hold-the-offering-price rule shall apply to the Bonds. **Bids will not be subject to cancellation in the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied and the hold-the-offering-price rule applies.** In the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied, resulting in the application of the hold-the-price rule, the issue price certificate shall be modified as necessary in the reasonable judgment of Bond Counsel and the City.

(d) By submitting a bid, the Winning Bidder shall (i) confirm that the underwriters have offered or will offer the Bonds to the public on or before the date of award at the offering price or prices (the “initial offering price”), or at the corresponding yield or yields, set forth in the bid submitted by the Winning Bidder and (ii) agree, on behalf of the underwriters participating in the purchase of the Bonds, that the underwriters will neither offer nor sell unsold Bonds of any maturity to which the hold-the-offering-price rule applies to any person at a price that is higher than the initial offering price to the public during the period starting on the sale date and ending on the earlier of the following:

- (1) the close of the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) business day after the sale date; or
- (2) the date on which the underwriters have sold at least 10% of that maturity of the Bonds to the public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price to the public.

The Winning Bidder shall promptly advise the City when the underwriters have sold 10% of that maturity of the Bonds to the public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price to the public, if that occurs prior to the close of the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) business day after the sale date.

(e) If the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied, then until the 10% test has been satisfied as to each maturity of the Bonds, the Winning Bidder agrees to promptly report to the City the prices at which the unsold Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the public. That reporting obligation shall continue, whether or not the Delivery Date has occurred, until the 10% test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity or until all Bonds of that maturity have been sold. The 10% test shall be considered satisfied with respect to a maturity when at least 10% of the Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the public at a particular price.

(f) The City acknowledges that, in making the representation set forth above, the Winning Bidder will rely on (i) the agreement of each underwriter to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in an agreement among underwriters and the related pricing wires, (ii) in the event a selling group has been created in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, the agreement of each dealer who is a member of the selling group to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in a selling group agreement and the related pricing wires, and (iii) in the event that an underwriter is a party to a retail distribution agreement that was employed in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, the agreement of each broker-dealer that is a party to such agreement to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in the retail distribution agreement and the related pricing wires. The City further acknowledges that each underwriter shall be solely liable for its failure to comply with its agreement regarding the hold-the-offering-price rule and that no underwriter shall be liable for the failure of any other underwriter, or of any dealer who is a member of a selling group, or of any broker-dealer that is a party to a retail distribution agreement to comply with its corresponding agreement regarding the hold-the-offering-price rule as applicable to the Bonds.

(g) By submitting a bid, each bidder confirms that: (i) any agreement among underwriters, any selling group agreement and each retail distribution agreement (to which the bidder is a party) relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each underwriter, each dealer who is a member of the selling group, and each broker-dealer that is a party to such retail distribution agreement, as applicable, to (A) report the prices at which it sells to the public the unsold Bonds of each maturity allotted to it until it is notified by the Winning Bidder that either the 10% test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity or all Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the public and (B) to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, if applicable, in each case if and for so long as directed by the Winning Bidder and as set forth in the related pricing wires, and (ii) any agreement among underwriters relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each underwriter that is a party to a retail distribution agreement to be employed in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the public to require each broker-dealer that is a party to such retail distribution agreement to (A) report the prices at which it sells to the public the unsold Bonds of each maturity allotted to it until it is notified by the Winning Bidder or such underwriter that either the 10% test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity or all Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the public and (B) comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, if applicable, in each case if and for so long as directed by the Winning Bidder or such underwriter and as set forth in the related pricing wires.

(h) Sales of any Bonds to any person that is a related party (defined below) to an underwriter shall not constitute sales to the public for purposes of this Official Notice of Sale. Further, for purposes of this section of the Official Notice of Sale entitled “CONDITIONS OF SALE - ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE”:

- (1) “public” means any person other than an underwriter or a related party,
- (2) “underwriter” means (A) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the City (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the public and (B) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (A) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the public (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the public),
- (3) a purchaser of any of the Bonds is a “related party” to an underwriter if the underwriter and the purchaser are subject, directly or indirectly, to (i) at least 50% common ownership of the voting power or the total value of their stock, if both entities are corporations (including direct ownership by one corporation of another), (ii) more than 50% common ownership of their capital interests or profits interests, if both entities are partnerships (including direct ownership by one partnership of another), or (iii) more than 50% common ownership of the value of the outstanding stock of the corporation or the capital interests or profit interests of the partnership, as applicable, if one entity is a corporation and the other entity is a partnership (including direct ownership of the applicable stock or interests by one entity of the other), and
- (4) “sale date” means the date that the Bonds are awarded by the City to the Winning Bidder.

**ADJUSTMENT OF INITIAL PRINCIPAL AMOUNTS:** See “THE BONDS – Adjustment of Principal Amounts and Maturity Schedule for the Bonds” for a description of the City’s reservation of the right to increase or decrease the principal (maturity) amount of any maturity of the Bonds, including the elimination of a maturity or maturities.

**GOOD FAITH DEPOSIT:** A bank cashier's check payable to the order of "City of Schertz, Texas" in the amount of \$182,300, which is 2% of the par value of the Bonds (the "Good Faith Deposit"), is required. The Good Faith Deposit will be retained uncashed by the City until the Bonds are delivered, and at that time it will be returned to the Purchaser uncashed on the date of delivery of the Bonds; however, should the Purchaser fail or refuse to take up and pay for the Bonds, said Good Faith Deposit is to be cashed by the City and the proceeds accepted as full and complete liquidated damages. The above mentioned Good Faith Deposit may accompany the bid, or it may be submitted separately; however, if submitted separately, it shall be made available to the City prior to the opening of the bids and shall be accompanied by instructions from the bank on which it is drawn which will authorize its use as a Good Faith Deposit by the Purchaser who shall be named in such instructions. No interest will be paid or allowed on any Good Faith Deposit. The checks accompanying all other bids will be returned immediately after the bids are opened and the award of the sale of the Bonds has been made.

**ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD — DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTY FORM:**

New obligation of the City to receive information from winning bidder if bidder is not a publicly traded business entity (a “Privately Held Bidder”). Effective January 1, 2018, pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2252.908 (the “Interested Party Disclosure Act”), the City may not award the Bonds to a winning bidder which is a Privately Held Bidder unless such party submits a Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the “Disclosure Form”) to the City as prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission (“TEC”). In the event that a Privately Held Bidder’s bid for the Bonds is the best bid received, the City, acting through its financial advisor, will promptly notify the winning Privately Held Bidder. That notification will serve as the City’s conditional verbal acceptance of the bid, and will obligate the winning Privately Held Bidder to establish (unless such winning Privately Held Bidder has previously so established) an account with the TEC, and promptly file a completed Disclosure Form, as described below, in order to allow the City to complete the award.

Process for completing the Disclosure Form. For purposes of illustration, the Disclosure Form is attached hereto, and reference should be made to such form for the following information needed to complete it: (a) item 2 - name of the governmental entity (City of Schertz, Texas) and (b) item 3 - the identification number assigned to this contract by the City (Schertz GOR2018 – Bid Form) and description of the goods or services (Purchase of the City of Schertz, Texas General Obligation and Refunding Bonds, Series 2018). The Interested Party Disclosure Act and the rules adopted by the TEC with respect thereto (the “Disclosure Rules”) require a non-publically traded business entity contracting with the City to complete the Disclosure Form electronically at <https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/main/file.htm>, print, sign, and deliver, in physical form, the certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC’s “electronic portal” to the City. The executed Disclosure Form must be sent by email to the City’s financial advisor at [mmcliney@samcocapital.com](mailto:mmcliney@samcocapital.com), as soon as possible following the notification of conditional verbal acceptance and prior to the final written award. Upon receipt of the final written award, the Disclosure Form with original signatures must be submitted by mail to Clay Binford, c/o Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, 300 Convent Street, Suite 2100, San Antonio, Texas 78205, along with a PDF executed version sent to [clayton.binford@nortonrosefulbright.com](mailto:clayton.binford@nortonrosefulbright.com).

Preparations for completion, and the significance of, the reported information. In accordance with the Interested Party Disclosure Act, the information reported by the winning Privately Held Bidder must be declared by an authorized agent of the Privately Held Winning Bidder. No exceptions may be made to that requirement. The Interested Party Disclosure Act and the Disclosure Form provides that such acknowledgment is made “under penalty of perjury.” Consequently, a winning Privately Held Bidder should take appropriate steps prior to completion of the Disclosure Form to familiarize itself with the Interested Party Disclosure Act, the Disclosure Rules and the Disclosure Form. Time will be of the essence in submitting the form to the City, and no final award will be made by the City regarding the sale of the Bonds until a completed Disclosure Form is received. If applicable, the City reserves the right to reject any bid that does not satisfy the requirement of a completed Disclosure Form, as described herein. Neither the City nor its consultants have the ability to verify the information included in a Disclosure Form, and neither party has an obligation nor undertakes responsibility for advising any bidder with respect to (1) the bidder’s obligation to submit the Disclosure Form or (2) the proper completion of the Disclosure Form. Consequently, an entity intending to bid on the Bonds should consult its own advisors to the extent it deems necessary and be prepared to submit the completed form, if required, promptly upon notification from the City that its bid is the conditional winning bid. Instructional videos on logging in and creating a certificate are provided on the TEC’s website at [https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf\\_info\\_form1295.htm](https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm).

**ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD - COMPLIANCE WITH H.B. 89 AND S.B. 252, 85TH TEXAS LEGISLATURE:** Each Bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, hereby verifies that it and its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates, if any, do not boycott Israel and, to the extent this Notice of Sale and Official Bid Form is a contract for goods or services, will not boycott Israel during the term of this agreement. The foregoing verification is made solely to comply with Section 2270.002, Texas Government Code, and to the extent such Section does not contravene applicable Federal law. As used in the foregoing verification, ‘boycott Israel’ means refusing to deal with, terminating business activities with, or otherwise taking any action that is intended to penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations specifically with Israel, or with a person or entity doing business in Israel or in an Israeli-controlled territory, but does not include an action made for ordinary business purposes. Each Bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, understands ‘affiliate’ to mean an entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with the Bidder and exists to make a profit.

Each Bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, hereby represents that neither it nor any of its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates is a company identified on a list prepared and maintained by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts under Section 2252.153 or Section 2270.0201, Texas Government Code, and posted on any of the following pages of such officer’s internet website: <https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/sudan-list.pdf>, <https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/iran-list.pdf>, or <https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/fto-list.pdf>. The foregoing representation is made solely to comply with Section 2252.152, Texas Government Code, and to the extent such Section does not contravene applicable Federal law and excludes the Bidder and each of its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates, if any, that the United States government has affirmatively declared to be excluded from its federal sanctions regime relating to Sudan or Iran or any federal sanctions regime relating to a foreign terrorist

organization Each Bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, understands “affiliate” to mean any entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with the Bidder and exists to make a profit

**IMPACT OF BIDDING SYNDICATE ON AWARD:** For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the City is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

### **OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

To assist the Purchaser in complying with Rule 15c2-12, as amended (the “Rule”), of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”), the City and the Purchaser contract and agree, by the submission and acceptance of the winning bid, as follows:

**COMPLIANCE WITH RULE:** The City has approved and authorized distribution of the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement for dissemination to potential purchasers of the Bonds, but does not presently intend to prepare any other document or version thereof for such purpose, except as described below. Accordingly, the City deems the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement to be final as of its date, within the meaning of the Rule, except for information relating to the offering prices, interest rates, final debt service schedule, selling compensation, identity of the Purchaser and other similar information, terms and provisions to be specified in the competitive bidding process. The Purchaser shall be responsible for promptly informing the City of the initial offering yields of the Bonds.

The City agrees to provide, or cause to be provided, to the Purchaser, the Preliminary Official Statement and the Official Statement and any amendments or supplements thereto in a “designated electronic format” (or printed format with respect to the final Official Statement) as may be required for the Purchaser to comply with the Rule or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (“MSRB”). The City consents to the distribution of such documents in a “designated electronic format.” Upon receipt, the Purchaser shall promptly file the Official Statement with the MSRB in accordance with the applicable MSRB rules.

The City will complete and authorize distribution of the Official Statement identifying the Purchaser and containing information omitted from the Preliminary Official Statement. The City does not intend to amend or supplement the Official Statement otherwise, except to take into account certain subsequent events, if any, as described below. By delivering the final Official Statement or any amendment or supplement thereto in the requested quantity to the Purchaser on or after the sale date, the City intends the same to be final as of such date, within the meaning of Section 15c2-12(b)(3) of the Rule. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the City makes no representation concerning the absence of material misstatements or omissions from the Official Statement, except only as and to the extent under "CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT" as described below. To the best knowledge and belief of the City, the Official Statement contains information, including financial information or operating data, concerning every entity, enterprise, fund, account, or person that is material to an evaluation of the offering of the Bonds.

**FINAL OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** In addition to delivering the Official Statement in a “designated electronic format”, the City will furnish to the Purchaser, within seven (7) days after the sale date, an aggregate maximum of fifty (50) copies of the Official Statement, together with information regarding interest rates and other terms relating to the reoffering of the Bonds, in accordance with Section 15c2-12(b)(3) of the Rule. The Purchaser may arrange, at its own expense, to have the Official Statement reproduced and printed if it requires more than 50 copies and may also arrange, at its own expense and responsibility, for completion and perfection of the first or cover page of the Official Statement so as to reflect interest rates and other terms and information related to the reoffering of the Bonds. The Purchaser will be responsible for providing information concerning the City and the Bonds to subsequent purchasers of the Bonds, and the City will undertake no responsibility for providing such information other than to make the Official Statement available to the Purchaser as provided herein. The City agrees to provide, or cause to be provided, to the Purchaser the Preliminary Official Statement and the Official Statement and any amendments or supplements thereto in a “designated electronic format” (or printed format with respect to the final Official Statement) as may be required for the Purchaser to comply with the Rule or the rules of the MSRB. The City consents to the distribution of such documents in a “designated electronic format”. Upon receipt, the Purchaser shall promptly file the Official Statement with the MSRB in accordance with the MSRB Rule G-32. The City's obligation to supplement the Official Statement to correct key representations determined to be materially misleading, after the date of the Official Statement, shall terminate upon initial delivery of the Bonds to the Purchaser, unless the Purchaser notifies, in writing, the City that less than all of the Bonds have been sold to ultimate customers on or before such date, in which case the obligation will extend for an additional period of time (but not more than 90 days after the sale date) until all of the Bonds have been sold to ultimate customers.

**CHANGES TO OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** If, subsequent to the date of the Official Statement, the City learns, through the ordinary course of business and without undertaking any investigation or examination for such purposes, or is notified by the Purchaser of any adverse event which causes the Official Statement to be materially misleading, and unless the Purchaser elects to terminate its obligation to purchase the Bonds, as described below under "DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS - CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY", the City will promptly prepare and supply to the Purchaser an appropriate amendment or supplement to the Official Statement satisfactory to the Purchaser and in a “designated electronic format”; provided, however, that the obligation of the City to do so will terminate when the City delivers the Bonds to the Purchaser, unless the Purchaser notifies the City on or before such date that less than all of the Bonds have been sold to ultimate customers, in which case the City's obligations hereunder will extend for an additional period of time (but not more than 90 days after the date the City delivers the Bonds) until all of the Bonds have been sold to ultimate customers.

**CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** At the time of payment for and delivery of the herein after defined Initial Bonds (the “Delivery Date”), the Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the City, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the City contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of the initial delivery thereof, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the City and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the City, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned,

such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the City believes to be reliable and the City has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; and (d) there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the City since the date of the last financial statements of the City appearing in the Official Statement. The Official Statement and Official Notice of Sale will be approved as to form and content and the use thereof in the offering of the Bonds will be authorized, ratified and approved by the City Council of the City on the date of sale, and the Purchaser will be furnished, upon request, at the time of payment for and the delivery of the Bonds, a certified copy of such approval, duly executed by the proper officials of the City.

**CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT:** The City will agree in the Ordinance to provide certain periodic information and notices of certain events in accordance with the Rule, as described in the Official Statement under "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION". The Purchaser's obligation to accept and pay for the Bonds is conditioned upon delivery to the Purchaser or its agent of a certified copy of the Ordinance containing the agreement described under such heading.

**COMPLIANCE WITH PRIOR UNDERTAKINGS:** During the past five years, the City has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made in accordance with the Rule.

On May 28, 2014, S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") upgraded the City's existing general obligation debt from "AA" to "AA+". The notice was filed in a timely matter; however, the notice was posted to the City's Utility CUSIP instead of to the City's General Obligation CUSIP. The notice was refiled on November 16, 2015 to the correct CUSIP.

Additionally, the City's audits for fiscal years ending 2013, 2014, 2016, and 2017 were timely filed; however, they were not linked to the CUSIP associated with the Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation. A corrective filing was made on October 2, 2018 to properly link the CUSIPs.

### **DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS**

**INITIAL DELIVERY OF INITIAL BOND:** The initial delivery of the Bonds to the Purchasers on the "Delivery Date" (identified below), will be accomplished by the issuance of either (i) a single fully registered Bond in the total principal amount of \$9,115,000 (preliminary, subject to change) payable in stated installments to the Purchaser and numbered T-1, or (ii) as one (1) fully registered Bond for each year of stated maturity in the applicable principal amount and denomination, to be numbered consecutively from R-1 and upward (in either case, the "Initial Bond(s)"), signed by manual or facsimile signature of the Mayor and the City Secretary approved by the Attorney General of Texas, and registered and manually signed by an authorized representative of the Comptroller of Public Accounts of the State of Texas. Initial Delivery (defined below) of the Bonds will be at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. Upon delivery of the Initial Bond(s), they shall be immediately canceled and one Bond for each stated maturity will be registered in the name of Cede & Co. and deposited with DTC in connection with DTC's Book-Entry-Only System. Payment for the Initial Bond(s) must be made in immediately available funds for unconditional credit to the City, or as otherwise directed by the City. The Purchaser will be given six (6) business days' notice of the time fixed for delivery of the Bonds. It is anticipated that Initial Delivery of the Initial Bonds can be made on or about November 27, 2018, but if for any reason the City is unable to make delivery by November 27, 2018, then the City shall immediately contact the Purchaser and offer to allow the Purchaser to extend for an additional thirty (30) days its obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds. If the Purchaser does not so elect within six (6) business days thereafter, then the Good Faith Deposit will be returned, and both the City and the Purchaser shall be relieved of further obligation. In no event shall the City be liable for any damages by reason of its failure to deliver the Bonds, provided such failure is due to circumstances beyond the City's reasonable control.

**EXCHANGE OF INITIAL BONDS FOR DEFINITIVE BONDS:** Upon payment for the Initial Bond(s) at the time of such delivery, the Initial Bond(s) are to be canceled by the Paying Agent/Registrar and registered definitive Bonds delivered in lieu thereof, in multiples of \$5,000 for each stated maturity, in accordance with written instructions received from the Purchaser and/or members of the Purchaser's syndicate. Such Bonds shall be registered by the Paying Agent/Registrar. It shall be the duty of the Purchaser and/or members of the Purchaser's syndicate to furnish to the Paying Agent/Registrar, at least five days prior to the delivery of the Initial Bond(s), final written instructions identifying the names and addresses of the registered owners, the stated maturities, interest rates, and denominations. The Paying Agent/Registrar will not be required to accept changes in such written instructions after the five day period, and if such written instructions are not received by the Paying Agent/Registrar five days prior to the delivery, the cancellation of the Initial Bond(s) and delivery of registered definitive Bonds may be delayed until the fifth day next following the receipt of such written instructions by the Paying Agent/Registrar.

**CUSIP NUMBERS:** It is anticipated that CUSIP identification numbers will be printed on the Bonds, but neither the failure to print such number on any Bond nor any error with respect thereto shall constitute cause for a failure or refusal by the Purchaser to accept delivery of and pay for the Bonds in accordance with the terms of the Official Bid Form and this Official Notice of Sale. All expenses in relation to the printing of CUSIP numbers on the Bonds shall be paid by the City; however, the CUSIP Service Bureau's charge for the assignment of the numbers shall be paid by the Purchaser.

**CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY:** The obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds is subject to the following conditions: the issuance of an approving opinion of the Attorney General of Texas, the Purchaser's acknowledgment of the receipt of the Initial Bond, the Purchaser's receipt of the legal opinions of Bond Counsel and the no-litigation certificate, and the non-occurrence of the events described below under the caption "No Material Adverse Change", all as described below. In addition, if the City fails to comply with its obligations described under "OFFICIAL STATEMENT" above, the Purchaser may terminate its contract to purchase the Bonds by delivering written notice to the City within five (5) days thereafter.

**NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE:** The obligation of the Purchaser to take up and pay for the Bonds, and of the City to deliver the Initial Bond(s), are subject to the condition that, up to the time of delivery of and receipt of payment for the Initial Bond(s), there shall have been no material adverse change in the affairs of the City subsequent to the date of sale from that set forth in the Preliminary Official Statement, as it may have been finalized, supplemented or amended through the date of delivery.

**LEGAL OPINIONS:** The Bonds are offered when, as and if issued, subject to the approval of certain legal matters by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and Bond Counsel (see discussion "LEGAL MATTERS - Legal Opinions and No-Litigation Certificate" in the Preliminary Official Statement).



**CHANGE IN TAX-EXEMPT STATUS:** At any time before the Bonds are tendered for initial delivery to the Purchaser, the Purchaser may withdraw its bid if the interest on obligations such as the Bonds shall be declared to be includable in the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Code, of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, either by U.S. Treasury regulations, by ruling or administrative guidance of the Internal Revenue Service, by a decision of any federal court, or by the terms of any federal income tax legislation enacted subsequent to the date of this Official Notice of Sale.

#### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

**FUTURE REGISTRATION:** The Bonds may be transferred, registered, and assigned on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar only upon presentation and surrender thereof to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bonds or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bonds being transferred or exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk, and expense. To the extent possible, new Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or its duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in denominations of \$5,000 for any one stated maturity or any integral multiple thereof and for a like aggregate principal amount and interest rate as the Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer.

**RECORD DATE:** The record date ("Record Date") for determining the party to whom the semiannual interest on the Bonds is payable on any interest payment date is the fifteenth day of the month next preceding such interest payment date.

**RATING:** A municipal bond rating application has been made to S&P Global Ratings ("S&P"). The outcome of the results will be made available to the Purchasers as soon as possible. (See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Rating" in the Preliminary Official Statement). An explanation of the significance of such a rating may be obtained from S&P. The rating of the Bonds by S&P reflects only the view of S&P at the time the rating is given, and the City makes no representations as to the appropriateness of the rating. There is no assurance that the rating will continue for any given period of time, or that the rating will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by S&P, if, in the judgment of such company, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of the rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

**REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE:** No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Act"), in reliance upon exemptions provided in such Act. The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The City assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchaser to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The City agrees to cooperate, at the Purchaser's written request and expense and within reasonable limits, in registering or qualifying the Bonds, or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary, but will in no instance execute a general consent to service of process in any state that the Bonds are offered for sale.

**ADDITIONAL COPIES:** Subject to the limitations described herein, an electronic copy of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Official Statement may be obtained from [www.samcocapital.com](http://www.samcocapital.com).

The City Council of the City in the Ordinance will approve the form and content of the Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Official Statement and authorized the use thereof in its initial offering of the Bonds. On the date of the sale, the Bonds will, in the Ordinance authorizing the issuance of the Bonds, reconfirm its approval of the form and content of the Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement, or amendment thereto, and authorize its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Purchaser.

/s/ Michael Carpenter  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Mayor,  
City of Schertz, Texas

ATTEST:

/s/ Brenda Dennis

\_\_\_\_\_  
City Secretary,  
City of Schertz, Texas

October 16, 2018

(this page intentionally left blank)

**OFFICIAL BID FORM**

Honorable Mayor and City Council  
 City of Schertz  
 1400 Schertz Parkway  
 Schertz, Texas 78154

October 23, 2018

Dear Ladies and Gentlemen:

Subject to the terms of your Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement dated October 16, 2018, which terms are incorporated by reference to this proposal, we hereby submit the following bid for \$9,115,000 (preliminary, subject to change) City of Schertz, Texas General Obligation and Refunding Bonds, Series 2018, dated October 15, 2018 (the "Bonds").

For said legally issued Bonds, we will pay you \$\_\_\_\_\_ (being a price of no less than 102% and no more than 107% of par value) plus accrued interest from their date to the date of delivery to us for Bonds maturing on February 1, in each of the following years, and bearing interest per annum as follows:

Year of Stated Maturity	Principal Amount at Stated Maturity	Coupon %	Year of Stated Maturity	Principal Amount at Stated Maturity	Coupon %
2019	\$165,000		2027	\$275,000	
2020	1,005,000		2028	585,000	
2021	965,000		2029	500,000	
2022	625,000		2030	515,000	
2023	655,000		2031	535,000	
2024	715,000		2032	555,000	
2025	715,000		2033	575,000	
2026	730,000				

Our calculation (which is not part of this bid) of the True Interest Cost from the above is: \_\_\_\_\_ %

**ADJUSTMENT OF INITIAL PRINCIPAL AMOUNTS:** As a condition to our submittal of this bid for the Bonds, we acknowledge the following: The City reserves the right to increase or decrease the principal (maturity) amount of any maturity of the Bonds, including the elimination of a maturity or maturities; provided, however, that the aggregate principal (denominational) amount of the Bonds shall not exceed \$9,115,000. Notice of any such changes shall be given to the successful bidder as soon as practicable following the notification of award, as described below, and this Official Notice of Sale may be amended at the sole discretion of the City to reflect such increase or decrease. The City will attempt to maintain total per bond underwriter spread when adjusting maturities. No such adjustment will have the effect of altering the basis upon which the best bid is determined. The successful bidder may not withdraw its bids or change the rates bid or any initial reoffering prices as a result of any changes made to the principal (denominational) amounts.

Of the principal maturities set forth in the table above, we have created term bonds (the "Term Bonds") as indicated in the following table (which may include no more than three Term Bonds. For those years which have been combined into a Term Bond, the principal amount shown in the table shown on page ii of the Official Notice of Sale will be the mandatory sinking fund redemption amounts in such years except that the amount shown in the year of the Term Bond maturity date will mature in such year. The Term Bonds created are as follows:

Term Bond Maturity Date February 1	Year of First Mandatory Redemption	Principal Amount of Term Bond	Interest Rate
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

The Initial Bond(s) shall be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, which will, upon payment for the Bonds, be cancelled by the Paying Agent/Registrar. The Bonds will then be registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee), under the Book-Entry-Only System.

Cashier's Check of the \_\_\_\_\_ Bank, \_\_\_\_\_, Texas, in the amount of \$182,300, which represents our Good Faith Deposit (is attached hereto) or (has been made available to you prior to the opening of this Bid), and is submitted in accordance with the terms as set forth in the Official Notice of Sale, said check is to be returned to the Purchaser.

We agree to accept delivery of the Bonds utilizing the Book-Entry-Only System through DTC and make payment for the Initial Bonds in immediately available funds at the Corporate Trust Division, UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas, not later than 10:00 A.M., Central Time, on Tuesday, November 27, 2018, or thereafter on the date the Bonds are tendered for delivery, pursuant to the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale. It will be the obligation of the purchaser of the Bonds to complete and file the DTC Eligibility Questionnaire. The undersigned agrees to the provisions of the Official Notice of Sale under the heading "CONDITIONS OF SALE – ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" and, as evidenced thereof, agrees to complete, execute, and deliver to the City, by the Delivery Date, a certificate relating to the "issue price" of the Bonds in the form and to the effect attached to or accompanying the Official Notice of Sale, with such changes thereto as may be acceptable to Bond Counsel for the City. (See "CONDITIONS OF SALE – ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" in the Official Notice of Sale.)

Through submittal of this executed Official Bid Form, the undersigned verifies that, except to the extent otherwise required by applicable Federal law, it does not and will not "boycott Israel" and is not on the Texas Comptroller's list concerning "foreign terrorist organizations" prepared and maintained thereby under applicable Texas law, all as more fully provided in the Official Notice of Sale under the heading "ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD - COMPLIANCE WITH H.B. 89 AND S.B. 252, 85TH TEXAS LEGISLATURE".

For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the City is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

Upon notification of conditional verbal acceptance, the undersigned will, if required by applicable Texas law as described in the Official Notice of Sale under the heading "ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD – DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTY FORM", complete an electronic form of the Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") through the Texas Ethics Commission's (the "TEC") electronic portal and the resulting certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's electronic portal will be printed, signed, notarized, and sent by email to the City's financial advisor at [mmcliney@samcocapital.com](mailto:mmcliney@samcocapital.com) and Bond Counsel at [clayton.binford@nortonrosefulbright.com](mailto:clayton.binford@nortonrosefulbright.com). The undersigned understands that the failure to provide the certified Disclosure Form will prohibit the City from providing final written award of the enclosed bid.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Representative  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Telephone Number  
\_\_\_\_\_  
E-mail Address

ACCEPTANCE CLAUSE

The above and foregoing bid is hereby in all things accepted by the City of Schertz, Texas, subject to and in accordance with the Official Notice of Sale and Official Bid Form, this 23<sup>rd</sup> day of October 2018.

/s/ \_\_\_\_\_  
Mayor,  
City of Schertz, Texas

ATTEST:

/s/ \_\_\_\_\_  
City Secretary,  
City of Schertz, Texas

**CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES**

**FORM 1295**

1 of 1

Complete Nos. 1 - 4 and 6 if there are interested parties.  
 Complete Nos. 1, 2, 3, 5, and 6 if there are no interested parties.

**OFFICE USE ONLY  
 CERTIFICATION OF FILING**

**1 Name of business entity filing form, and the city, state and country of the business entity's place of business.**

**2 Name of governmental entity or state agency that is a party to the contract for which the form is being filed.**

City of Schertz, Texas

**3 Provide the identification number used by the governmental entity or state agency to track or identify the contract, and provide a description of the services, goods, or other property to be provided under the contract.**

Contract Number: Schertz GOR 2018 - Bid Form  
 Purchase of the City of Schertz, Texas General Obligation and Refunding Bonds, Series 2018

4	Name of Interested Party	City, State, Country (place of business)	Nature of interest (check applicable)	
			Controlling	Intermediary
<b>SAMPLE</b>				

**5 Check only if there is NO Interested Party.**

**6 UNSWORN DECLARATION**

My name is \_\_\_\_\_, and my date of birth is \_\_\_\_\_.

My address is \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.  
(street) (city) (state) (zip code) (country)

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Executed in \_\_\_\_\_ County, State of \_\_\_\_\_, on the \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.  
(month) (year)

\_\_\_\_\_  
 Signature of authorized agent of contracting business entity  
 (Declarant)

(this page intentionally left blank)

**\$9,115,000\***  
**CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS**  
**GENERAL OBLIGATION AND REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2018**

**ISSUE PRICE CERTIFICATE**

The undersigned, on behalf of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ (“\_\_\_\_\_”), hereby certifies as set forth below with respect to the sale of the above-captioned obligations (the “Obligations”) of the City of Schertz, Texas (the “Issuer”).

**1. Reasonably Expected Initial Offering Price.**

(a) As of the Sale Date, the reasonably expected initial offering prices of the Obligations to the Public by \_\_\_\_\_ are the prices listed in Schedule A (the “Expected Offering Prices”). The Expected Offering Prices are the prices for the Maturities of the Obligations used by \_\_\_\_\_ in formulating its bid to purchase the Obligations. Attached as Schedule B is a true and correct copy of the bid provided by \_\_\_\_\_ to purchase the Obligations.

(b) \_\_\_\_\_ was not given the opportunity to review other bids prior to submitting its bid.

(c) The bid submitted by \_\_\_\_\_ constituted a firm offer to purchase the Obligations.

**2. Defined Terms.**

(a) *Maturity* means Obligations with the same credit and payment terms. Obligations with different maturity dates, or Obligations with the same maturity date but different stated interest rates, are treated as separate Maturities.

(b) *Public* means any person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter or a related party to an Underwriter. The term “related party” for purposes of this certificate generally means any two or more persons who have greater than 50 percent common ownership, directly or indirectly.

(c) *Sale Date* means the first day on which there is a binding contract in writing for the sale of a Maturity of the Obligations. The Sale Date of the Obligations is October 23, 2018.

(d) *Underwriter* means (i) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Obligations to the Public, and (ii) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (i) of this paragraph to participate in the initial sale of the Obligations to the Public (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Obligations to the Public).

The representations set forth in this certificate are limited to factual matters only. Nothing in this certificate represents \_\_\_\_\_ interpretation of any laws, including specifically sections 103 and 148 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the Treasury Regulations thereunder. The undersigned understands that the foregoing information will be relied upon by the Issuer with respect to certain of the representations set forth in the Tax Certificate with respect to the Obligations and with respect to compliance with the federal income tax rules affecting the Obligations, and by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP in connection with rendering its opinion that the interest on the Obligations is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the preparation of the Internal Revenue Service Form 8038-G, and other federal income tax advice that it may give to the Issuer from time to time relating to the Obligations.

\_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\*Preliminary, subject to change.

(this page intentionally left blank)



**SCHEDULE A**  
**EXPECTED OFFERING PRICES**

(this page intentionally left blank)

**SCHEDULE B**  
**COPY OF UNDERWRITER'S BID**

(this page intentionally left blank)

This Preliminary Official Statement and the information contained herein are subject to completion or amendment without notice. These securities may not be sold, nor may offers to buy them be accepted, prior to the time the Official Statement is delivered in final form. Under no circumstances shall this Preliminary Official Statement constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy, nor shall there be any sale of, these securities in any jurisdiction in which such offer, solicitation or sale would be unlawful prior to registration, qualification or filing under the securities laws of any such jurisdiction.

**NEW ISSUE BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY**

**Rating: S&P "Applied for"**  
(See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION – Rating" herein)

**PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT**  
**Dated: October 16, 2018**

*In the opinion of Bond Counsel (identified below), assuming continuing compliance by the Issuer (defined below) after the date of initial delivery of the Bonds (defined below) with certain covenants contained in the Ordinance (defined below) and subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein, interest on the Bonds under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) will be excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes under Section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of individuals or, except as described herein, corporations. (See "TAX MATTERS" herein.)*

**\$9,115,000\***

**CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS**

**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Guadalupe, Comal and Bexar Counties)**  
**GENERAL OBLIGATION AND REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2018**

**Dated Date: October 15, 2018**

**Due: February 1, as shown on page 2**

The \$9,115,000\* City of Schertz, Texas General Obligation and Refunding Bonds, Series 2018 (the "Bonds") are being issued by the City of Schertz, Texas (the "Issuer" or the "City") in accordance with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas (the "State"), particularly Chapters 1207, 1251 and 1331, as amended, Texas Government Code, Chapter 331, as amended, Texas Local Government Code, a bond election held on November 3, 2015, and an ordinance (the "Ordinance") to be adopted by the City Council on October 23, 2018. (See "THE BONDS - Authority for Issuance" herein.)

The Bonds are direct obligations of the Issuer payable from an annual ad valorem tax levied against all taxable property in the City, within the limits prescribed by law. (See "THE BONDS - Security for Payment" and "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein.)

Interest on the Bonds will accrue from October 15, 2018 (the "Dated Date") and will be payable on February 1 and August 1 of each year, commencing February 1, 2019 until stated maturity or prior redemption, and will be calculated on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months. The definitive Bonds will be issued as fully registered obligations in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York. DTC will act as securities depository (the "Securities Depository"). Book-entry interests in the Bonds will be made available for purchase in principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof within a maturity. Purchasers of the Bonds ("Beneficial Owners") will not receive physical delivery of certificates representing their interest in the Bonds purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Bonds, the principal of and interest on the Bonds will be payable by UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas, as initial Paying Agent/Registrar, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its Participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.)

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used (1) to refund certain of the City's currently outstanding obligations, as identified in Schedule I attached hereto (the "Refunded Obligations"), for debt service savings, (2) for the purpose of providing street and bridge improvements, and (3) to pay costs of issuance and expenses relating to the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Purpose of Bonds" herein.)

---

SEE FOLLOWING PAGE FOR STATED MATURITIES, PRINCIPAL AMOUNTS,  
INTEREST RATES, INITIAL YIELDS, CUSIP NUMBERS, AND REDEMPTION PROVISIONS FOR THE BONDS

---

*The Bonds are offered for delivery, when, as and if issued and received by the initial purchasers thereof at a competitive sale (the "Purchasers") and subject to the approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "LEGAL MATTERS – Legal Opinions and No-Litigation Certificate" and "APPENDIX C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel" herein.) It is expected that the Bonds will be available for delivery through DTC on or about November 27, 2018.*

\*Preliminary, subject to change.

**BIDS DUE TUESDAY, OCTOBER 23, 2018, 11:00 A.M. CENTRAL TIME**

(this page intentionally left blank)

**\$9,115,000\***  
**CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS**  
**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Guadalupe, Comal and Bexar Counties)**  
**GENERAL OBLIGATION AND REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2018**

**STATED MATURITY SCHEDULE\***

CUSIP No. Prefix <sup>(1)</sup> 806645

<u>Stated</u>				<u>CUSIP</u>	<u>Stated</u>				<u>CUSIP</u>
<u>Maturity</u>	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Intital</u>	<u>No.</u>	<u>Maturity</u>	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Intital</u>	<u>No.</u>
<u>2/1</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Rate</u>	<u>Yield</u>	<u>Suffix</u> <sup>(1)</sup>	<u>2/1</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Rate</u>	<u>Yield</u>	<u>Suffix</u> <sup>(1)</sup>
2019	\$ 165,000				2027	\$ 275,000			
2020	1,005,000				2028	585,000			
2021	965,000				2029	500,000			
2022	625,000				2030	515,000			
2023	655,000				2031	535,000			
2024	715,000				2032	555,000			
2025	715,000				2033	575,000			
2026	730,000								

(Interest to accrue from the Dated Date)

The Bonds maturing on or after February 1, 2029 are subject to optional redemption prior to their scheduled maturities at the option of the Issuer, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on February 1, 2028 or any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest to the date of redemption as further described herein. Additionally, the Purchaser may select certain maturities of the Bonds to be grouped together as a "term bond" and such term bonds would be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption. (See "THE BONDS - Redemption Provisions of the Bonds" herein.)

\* *Preliminary, subject to change.*

<sup>(1)</sup> CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of the owner of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of The American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the City, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchasers are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

**CITY OF SCHERTZ TEXAS**  
**1400 Schertz Parkway**  
**Schertz, Texas 78154**  
**Telephone: (210) 619-1000**

**ELECTED OFFICIALS**

Name	Years Served	Term Expires (November)	Occupation
Michael Carpenter Mayor	13	2019	Sales Manager
David L. Scagliola Mayor Pro-Tem, Place 5	6 months	2020	Adjunct Professor
Mark Davis Councilmember, Place 1	1	2019	Operations Analyst
Ralph Gutierrez Councilmember, Place 2	1	2019	Retired
Scott Larson Councilmember, Place 3	1	2020	Insurance Rater
Cedric Edwards Councilmember, Place 4	8	2020	Investment Advisor
Angelina Kiser Councilmember, Place 6	1	2018	University Management Professor
Bert Crawford Councilmember, Place 7	1	2018	Retired

**ADMINISTRATION**

Name	Position	Length of Service (Years)
Brian James	Acting City Manager	4 months*
Dudley Wait	Executive Director of Operations	18
James Walters	Director of Finance	8
Brenda Dennis	City Secretary	11
Charlie Zech	City Attorney	5

\*Prior to be appointed Acting City Manager, Mr. James served 6 years as Executive Director of Development Services.

**CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS**

**Bond Counsel**.....Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP  
San Antonio, Texas

**Certified Public Accountants**.....Armstrong, Vaughan & Associates, P.C.  
San Antonio, Texas

**Financial Advisor** ..... SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.  
San Antonio, Texas

**For Additional Information Please Contact:**

Mr. James Walters  
*Director of Finance*  
**City of Schertz**  
1400 Schertz Parkway  
Schertz, Texas 78154  
Telephone: (210) 619-1000  
jwalters@schertz.com

Mr. Mark McLiney  
*Senior Managing Director*  
**SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.**  
1020 Northeast Loop 410, Suite 640  
San Antonio, Texas 78209  
Telephone: (210) 832-9760  
mmcliney@samcocapital.com

Mr. Andrew T. Friedman  
*Managing Director*  
**SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.**  
1020 Northeast Loop 410, Suite 640  
San Antonio, Texas 78209  
Telephone: (210) 832-9760  
afriedman@samcocapital.com



**USE OF INFORMATION IN THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

For purposes of compliance with Rule 15c2-12 of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, as amended (the "Rule"), and in effect on the date of this Preliminary Official Statement, this document constitutes an "official statement" of the Issuer with respect to the Bonds that has been "deemed final" by the Issuer as of its date except for the omission of no more than the information permitted by the Rule.

No dealer, broker, salesman, or other person has been authorized to give any information, or to make any representation other than those contained in this Official Statement, and, if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the Issuer. This Official Statement is not to be used in connection with an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy in any state in which such offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making such offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making such offer or solicitation is not qualified to do so or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer or solicitation. Any information or expression of opinion herein contained is subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create an implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the Issuer or other matters described herein since the date hereof.

The information and expressions of opinion herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder will under any circumstances create any implication that there has been no change in the information or opinions set forth herein after the date of this Official Statement. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the Issuer's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion of this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with its responsibilities to the Issuer and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

The Purchasers have provided the following statement for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Purchasers have reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and a part of, their responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Purchasers do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION THEREOF.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE PURCHASERS MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE THE MARKET PRICE OF THIS ISSUE AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

NONE OF THE ISSUER, ITS FINANCIAL ADVISOR, OR THE PURCHASERS MAKE ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT REGARDING THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY OR ITS BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM AS SUCH INFORMATION IS PROVIDED BY DTC.

The agreements of the City and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement or any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THE ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT, INCLUDING ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>COVER PAGE FOR THE BONDS</b> .....	1	<b>INVESTMENT POLICIES</b> .....	12
<b>ELECTED AND APPOINTED OFFICIALS</b> .....	3	<b>AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES</b> .....	14
<b>USE OF INFORMATION IN THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT</b>	4	<b>TAX RATE LIMITATIONS</b> .....	18
<b>SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT</b>	5	<b>TAX MATTERS</b> .....	19
<b>INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT</b> .....	6	<b>CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION</b>	20
<b>THE BONDS</b> .....	6	<b>LEGAL MATTERS</b> .....	22
<b>REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE</b> .....	10	<b>FORWARD LOOKING STATEMENTS</b> .....	23
<b>BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM</b> .....	11	<b>OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION</b> .....	23
Schedule of Refunded Obligations .....		SCHEDULE I	
Financial Information – City of Schertz, Texas .....		APPENDIX A	
General Information Regarding the City of Schertz and Guadalupe, Comal and Bexar Counties, Texas .....		APPENDIX B	
Form of Opinion of Bond Counsel .....		APPENDIX C	
Excerpts from the Issuer's Audited Financial Statements for the Year Ended September 30, 2017 .....		APPENDIX D	

## SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

The selected data is subject in all respects to the more complete information and definitions contained or incorporated in this Official Statement. The offering of the Bonds to potential investors is made only by means of this entire Official Statement. No person is authorized to detach this page from this Official Statement or to otherwise use it without the entire Official Statement.

<b>The Issuer</b>	The City of Schertz, Texas (the "Issuer" or the "City"), is located between the cities of San Antonio, Texas and New Braunfels, Texas, on Interstate 35 and FM 78 and on Interstate 10 between the cities of San Antonio, Texas and Seguin, Texas and in the area between IH-35 and IH-10. The corporate limits extend into the counties of Bexar, Guadalupe and Comal, with the largest portion of the City being located within Guadalupe County. The City was incorporated in December 1958 and is a home rule municipality operating under its own Home Rule Charter since 1974. The Home-Rule Charter was most recently amended November 3, 2015. The City operates under the Council/Manager form of government pursuant to the Constitution and the general laws of the State of Texas. The City Manager, appointed by the Mayor and the seven-member elected City Council (the "City Council"), is the chief administrative officer of the City. (SEE "APPENDIX B –General Information Regarding the City of Schertz, Texas and Guadalupe, Comal, and Bexar Counties, Texas" herein)
<b>The Bonds</b>	The \$9,115,000* City of Schertz, Texas General Obligation and Refunding Bonds, Series 2018 (the "Bonds") are being issued by the City of Schertz, Texas (the "Issuer" or the "City") in accordance with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas (the "State"), particularly Chapters 1207, 1251 and 1331, as amended, Texas Government Code, Chapter 331, as amended, Texas Local Government Code, a bond election held on November 3, 2015, and an ordinance (the "Ordinance") to be adopted by the City Council on October 23, 2018.
<b>Paying Agent/Registrar</b>	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas.
<b>Security for the Bonds</b>	The Bonds constitute direct and general obligations of the Issuer payable from an annual ad valorem tax levied against all taxable property in the City, within the limits prescribed by law. (See "THE BONDS - Security for Payment" and "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein.)
<b>Redemption Provisions</b>	The Bonds maturing on or after February 1, 2029 are subject to optional redemption prior to their scheduled maturities at the option of the Issuer, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof, on February 1, 2028 or any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par plus accrued interest as further described herein. Additionally, the Purchasers may select certain maturities of the Bonds to be grouped together as one or more term bonds and such term bonds would be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption. (See "THE BONDS - Redemption Provisions of the Bonds" herein.)
<b>Tax Matters</b>	In the opinion of Bond Counsel, the interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income of the owners thereof for purposes of federal income taxation under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein, including the alternative minimum tax on corporations. (See "TAX MATTERS" and "APPENDIX C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel" herein.)
<b>Use of Bond Proceeds</b>	Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used (1) to refund certain of the City's currently outstanding obligations, as identified in Schedule I attached hereto (the "Refunded Obligations"), for debt service savings, (2) for the purpose of providing street and bridge improvements, and (3) to pay costs of issuance and expenses relating to the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Purpose of Bonds" herein.)
<b>Rating</b>	A municipal bond rating application for the Bonds has been made to S&P Global Ratings ("S&P"). The outcome of the results will be made available as soon as possible. (See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Ratings")
<b>Book-Entry-Only System</b>	The Issuer intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York relating to the method and timing of payment and the method and transfer relating to the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.)
<b>Payment Record</b>	The City has never defaulted on the payment of its general obligation or revenue indebtedness.
<b>Future Debt Issues</b>	The Issuer does not anticipate the issuance of any additional ad valorem tax debt in 2018.
<b>Delivery</b>	When issued, anticipated to occur on or about November 27, 2018.
<b>Legality</b>	Delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel.

\*Preliminary, subject to change.

## OFFICIAL STATEMENT

Relating to

**\$9,115,000\***

**CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS**

**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Guadalupe, Comal and Bexar Counties)**

**GENERAL OBLIGATION AND REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2018**

### INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT

This Official Statement, including Schedule I and the appendices hereto, provides certain information in connection with the issuance by the City of Schertz, Texas (the "City" or "Issuer") of its \$9,115,000\* General Obligation and Refunding Bonds, Series 2018 (the "Bonds") identified on the cover page hereof.

The Issuer is a political subdivision of the State of Texas and a home-rule municipal corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Texas. The Bonds are being issued by the City of Schertz, Texas (the "Issuer" or the "City") in accordance with the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas (the "State"), particularly Chapters 1207, 1251 and 1331, as amended, Texas Government Code, Chapter 331, as amended, Texas Local Government Code, and an ordinance (the "Ordinance") to be adopted by the City Council on October 23, 2018.

Unless otherwise indicated, capitalized terms used in this Official Statement have the same meanings assigned to such terms in the Ordinance. Included in this Official Statement are descriptions of the Bonds and certain information about the Issuer and its finances. ***ALL DESCRIPTIONS OF DOCUMENTS CONTAINED HEREIN ARE SUMMARIES ONLY AND ARE QUALIFIED IN THEIR ENTIRETY BY REFERENCE TO EACH SUCH DOCUMENT.*** Copies of such documents may be obtained upon request from the Issuer or its Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 1020 NE Loop 410, Suite 640, San Antonio, Texas 78209, via electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, handling, and delivery charges.

All financial and other information presented in this Official Statement has been provided by the City from its records, except for information expressly attributed to other sources. The presentation of information, including tables of receipts from taxes and other sources, is intended to show recent historic information, and is not intended to indicate future or continuing trends in financial position or other affairs of the City. No representation is made that past experience, as is shown by financial and other information, will necessarily continue or be repeated in the future.

This Official Statement speaks only as to its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of the Final Official Statement (defined below) pertaining to the Bonds will be filed by the Purchasers with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board through its Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" herein for a description of the City's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

### THE BONDS

#### Purpose of Bonds

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used (1) to refund certain of the City's currently outstanding Bonds, as identified in Schedule I attached hereto (the "Refunded Bonds"), for debt service savings, (2) for the purpose of providing street and bridge improvements, and (3) to pay costs of issuance and expenses relating to the Bonds.

#### Refunded Bonds

The Refunded Obligations, and interest due thereon, are to be paid on their scheduled redemption date from cash and investments to be deposited with UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas, a national banking association (the "Escrow Agent") pursuant to an Escrow Deposit Letter dated as of October 23, 2018 (the "Escrow Agreement") between the City and the Escrow Agent.

The Ordinance provides that the City will deposit certain proceeds of the sale of the Bonds, along with other lawfully available funds of the City (if any), with the Escrow Agent in the amount necessary and sufficient to accomplish the discharge and final payment of the Refunded Obligations at their scheduled date of early redemption (the "Redemption Date"). Such funds shall be held by the Escrow Agent in an escrow fund (the "Escrow Fund") irrevocably pledged to the payment of principal of and interest on the Refunded Obligations. SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., in its capacity as Financial Advisor to the City, will certify as to the sufficiency of the amount initially deposited to the Escrow Fund, without regard to investment (if any), to pay the principal of and interest on the Refunded Obligations, when due, on the Redemption Date (the "Sufficiency Certificate"). Amounts on deposit in the Escrow Fund shall, until such time as needed for their intended purpose, be (i) held uninvested in cash and/or (ii) invested in certain direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America (including obligations unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America) that were, on the date the Ordinance was adopted, rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized rating firm of not less than "AAA". Cash and investments, if any, held in the Escrow Fund shall not be available to pay debt service requirements on the Bonds.

\*Preliminary, subject to change.

Prior to, or simultaneously with, the issuance of the Bonds, the City will give irrevocable instructions to provide notice to the owners of the Refunded Obligations that the Refunded Obligations will be redeemed prior to stated maturity on which date money will be made available to redeem the Refunded Obligations from money held under the Escrow Agreement.

By the deposit of the cash with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement, the City will have effected the defeasance of all of the Refunded Obligations in accordance with the law. It is the opinion of Bond Counsel, in reliance upon the Sufficiency Certificate provided by SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., that as a result of such defeasance the Refunded Obligations will be outstanding only for the purpose of receiving payments from the Escrow Fund held for such purpose by the Escrow Agent and such Refunded Obligations will not be deemed as being outstanding obligations of the City payable from taxes nor for the purpose of applying any limitation on the issuance of debt. The City has covenanted in the Escrow Agreement to make timely deposits to the Escrow Fund, from lawfully available funds, of any additional amounts required to pay the principal of and interest on the Refunded Obligations, if for any reason, the cash balances on deposit or scheduled to be on deposit in the Escrow Fund be insufficient to make such payment.

### **General Description**

The Bonds will be dated October 15, 2018 (the "Dated Date"), will be issued in denominations of \$5,000 principal or any integral multiple thereof within a stated maturity, and will mature on the dates and in the principal amounts and will bear interest at the rates set forth on page 2 of this Official Statement. Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date, with such interest payable on February 1 and August 1 of each year, commencing February 1, 2019, until stated maturity or prior redemption. Principal and interest on the Bonds are payable in the manner described herein under "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM." In the event the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued, the interest on the Bonds will be payable to the registered owner as shown on the security register maintained by UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas, as the initial Paying Agent/Registrar, as of the Record Date (defined herein) by check, mailed first-class, postage prepaid, to the address of such person on the security register or by such other method acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar requested by and at the risk and expense of the registered owner. In the event the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued, principal of the Bonds will be payable at Stated Maturity or prior redemption upon presentation and surrender thereof at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar.

If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds will be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day when banking institutions in the city where the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment will be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions are authorized to close; and payment on such date will have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

### **Authority for Issuance**

The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas, including Chapters 1207, 1251 and 1331, as amended, Texas Government Code, Chapter 331, as amended, Texas Local Government Code, the Ordinance, an election held November 3, 2015, and the City's Home Rule Charter.

### **Security for Payment**

The Bonds are direct obligations payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, within the limitations prescribed by law, on all taxable property located within the City. (See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein.)

### **Redemption Provisions**

The Issuer reserves the right to redeem Bonds stated to mature February 1, 2029, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof (if within a stated maturity, selected at random and by lot by the Paying Agent/Registrar) on February 1, 2028 or any date thereafter, at the par value thereof plus accrued interest from the most recent interest payment date to the date fixed for redemption. Two or more consecutive maturities of the Bonds may be grouped together as a term bond by the Purchasers, and such term bonds would be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the Ordinance. If less than all of the Bonds within a stated maturity are to be redeemed, the particular Bonds to be redeemed will be selected by lot or by other customary random method by the Paying Agent/Registrar.

### **Selection of Bonds for Redemption**

If less than all of the Bonds are to be redeemed, the City shall determine the amounts and maturities thereof to be redeemed and shall direct the Paying Agent/Registrar to select by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, to be redeemed.

### **Notice of Redemption**

At least 30 days prior to the date fixed for any redemption of any Bonds or portions thereof prior to stated maturity, the Issuer shall cause notice of such redemption to be sent by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the registered owner of each Bond or a portion thereof to be redeemed at its address as it appeared on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar on the day such notice of redemption is mailed. By the date fixed for any such redemption, due provision shall be made with the Paying Agent/Registrar for the payment of the required redemption price for the Bonds or portions thereof which are to be so redeemed. If such notice of redemption is given and if due provision for such payment is made, all as provided above, the Bonds or portions thereof which are to be so redeemed thereby automatically shall be treated as redeemed prior to their scheduled maturities, and they shall not bear interest after the date fixed for redemption, and they shall not be regarded as being outstanding

except for the right of the registered owner to receive the redemption price from the Paying Agent/Registrar out of the funds provided for such payment.

ANY NOTICE OF REDEMPTION SO MAILED SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY PRESUMED TO HAVE BEEN DULY GIVEN IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER ONE OR MORE BONDHOLDERS FAILED TO RECEIVE SUCH NOTICE, AND, PROVIDED THAT PROVISION FOR PAYMENT OF THE REDEMPTION PRICE IS MADE AND ANY OTHER CONDITIONS TO REDEMPTION ARE SATISFIED, INTEREST ON THE REDEEMED BONDS SHALL CEASE TO ACCRUE FROM AND AFTER SUCH REDEMPTION DATE NOTWITHSTANDING THAT A BOND HAS NOT BEEN PRESENTED FOR PAYMENT.

Bonds of a denomination larger than \$5,000 may be redeemed in part (\$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof). Any Bond to be partially redeemed must be surrendered in exchange for one or more new Bonds of the same stated maturity and interest rate for the unredeemed portion of the principal. In the event of redemption of less than all of the Bonds of a particular stated maturity, the Paying Agent/Registrar is required to select the Bonds of such stated maturity to be redeemed by such random method as it deems fair and appropriate and which may provide for the selection for redemption of portions (equal to any authorized denomination) of the Bonds of a denomination larger than \$5,000.

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the Issuer, so long as a Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Ordinance or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the Beneficial Owner, will not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the Issuer will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, a redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement a redemption of such Bonds from the Beneficial Owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be redeemed will not be governed by the Ordinance and will not be conducted by the Issuer or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the Issuer or the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or Beneficial Owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.)

**Sources and Uses**

<b><u>Sources of Funds</u></b>	<b><u>The Bonds</u></b>
Par Amount	\$ _____
Accrued Interest	_____
[Net] Original Issue Reoffering Premium	_____
City Cash Contribution	_____
<b>Total Sources of Funds</b>	<b>\$ _____</b>
<b><u>Uses of Funds</u></b>	
Deposit to Project Fund	\$ _____
Deposit to Escrow Fund	_____
Costs of Issuance	_____
Purchasers' Discount	_____
Deposit to Bond Fund	_____
<b>Total Uses of Funds</b>	<b>\$ _____</b>

**Payment Record**

The City has never defaulted on the payment of its ad valorem tax-backed indebtedness.

**Legality**

The Bonds are offered when, as and if issued, subject to the approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the rendering of opinions as to certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas ("Bond Counsel"). The legal opinion of Bond Counsel will accompany the Bonds to be deposited with DTC or will be printed on the Bonds should the Book-Entry-Only System be discontinued. A form of the legal opinion of Bond Counsel appears in APPENDIX C attached hereto.

**Defeasance**

The Ordinance provides for the defeasance of the Bonds when payment of the principal amount of the Bonds plus interest accrued on the Bonds to their due date (whether such due date be by reason of stated maturity, redemption, or otherwise), is provided by irrevocably depositing with a paying agent, or other authorized escrow agent, in trust (1) money in an amount sufficient to make such payment, (2) Government Securities (defined below), certified by an independent public accounting firm of national reputation to mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times to insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to make such payment, and all necessary and proper fees, compensation and expenses of the paying agent for the Bonds, or (3) a combination of money and Government Securities together so certified sufficient to make such payment; provided, however, that no certification by an independent accounting firm of the sufficiency of deposits shall be required in connection with a gross defeasance of Bonds. The City has additionally reserved the right, subject to satisfying the requirements of (1) and (2) above, to substitute other Government Securities originally deposited, to reinvest the uninvested moneys on deposit for such

defeasance and to withdraw for the benefit of the City moneys in excess of the amount required for such defeasance. The Ordinance provides that "Government Securities" means any securities and obligations now or hereafter authorized by State law that are eligible to discharge obligations such as the Bonds. Current State law permits defeasance with the following types of securities: (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date of the purchase thereof, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent, (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that on the date the governing body of the City adopts or approves the proceedings authorizing the financial arrangements have been refunded and are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent, and (d) any additional securities and obligations hereafter authorized by State law as eligible for use to accomplish the discharge of obligations such as the Bonds. City officials may restrict the use of such Government Securities as deemed appropriate. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities acquired to defease any Bonds, or those for any other Government Securities, will be maintained at any particular rating category. Further, there is no assurance that current State law will not be amended in a manner that expands or contracts the list of permissible defeasance securities (such list consisting of these securities identified in clauses (a) through (c) above), or any rating requirement thereon, that may be purchased with defeasance proceeds relating to the Bonds ("Defeasance Proceeds"), though the City has reserved the right to utilize any additional securities for such purpose in the event the aforementioned list is expanded. Because the Ordinance does not contractually limit such permissible defeasance securities and expressly recognizes the ability of the City to use lawfully available Defeasance Proceeds to defease all or any portion of the Bonds, registered owners of Bonds are deemed to have consented to the use of Defeasance Proceeds to purchase such other defeasance securities, notwithstanding the fact that such defeasance securities may not be of the same investment quality as those currently identified under State law as permissible defeasance securities.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded to be outstanding or unpaid. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment of the Bonds have been made as described above, all rights of the City to initiate proceedings to call the Bonds for redemption or take any other action amending the terms of the Bonds are extinguished; provided, however, the City has the option, to be exercised at the time of the defeasance of the Bonds, to call for redemption at an earlier date those Bonds which have been defeased to their maturity date, if the City (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Bonds for redemption, (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements, and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

#### **Amendments**

The Issuer may amend the Ordinance without the consent of or notice to any registered owners in any manner not detrimental to the interests of the registered owners, including the curing of any ambiguity, inconsistency, or formal defect or omission therein. In addition, the Issuer may, with the written consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Bonds then outstanding affected thereby, amend, add to, or rescind any of the provisions of the Ordinance; except that, without the consent of the registered owners of all of the Bonds affected, no such amendment, addition, or rescission may (1) change the date specified as the date on which the principal of or any installment of interest on any Bond is due and payable, reduce the principal amount thereof, or the rate of interest thereon, change the place or places at or the coin or currency in which any Bond or interest thereon is payable, change the redemption price or amount, or in any other way modify the terms of payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds, (2) give any preference to any Bond over any other Bond, or (3) reduce the aggregate principal amount of Bonds required for consent to any amendment, addition, or waiver.

#### **Default and Remedies**

If the City defaults in the payment of principal, interest, or redemption price on the Bonds when due, or if it fails to make payments into any fund or funds created in the Ordinance, or defaults in the observation or performance of any other covenants, conditions, or obligations set forth in the Ordinance, the registered owners may seek a writ of mandamus to compel City officials to carry out their legally imposed duties with respect to the Bonds, if there is no other available remedy at law to compel performance of the Bonds or the Ordinance and the City's Bonds are not uncertain or disputed. The issuance of a writ of mandamus is controlled by equitable principles and rests with the discretion of the court, but may not be arbitrarily refused. There is no acceleration of maturity of the Bonds in the event of default and, consequently, the remedy of mandamus may have to be relied upon from year to year. The Ordinance does not provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interest of the bondholders upon any failure of the City to perform in accordance with the terms of the Ordinance, or upon any other condition and, accordingly, all legal actions to enforce such remedies would have to be undertaken at the initiative of, and be financed by, the registered owners. The Texas Supreme Court ruled in *Tooke v. City of Mexia*, 197 S.W.3d 325 (Tex. 2006) that a waiver of sovereign immunity in a contractual dispute must be provided for by statute in "clear and unambiguous" language.

Furthermore, *Tooke*, and subsequent jurisprudence, held that a municipality is not immune from suit for torts committed in the performance of its proprietary functions, as it is for torts committed in the performance of its governmental functions (the "Proprietary-Governmental Dichotomy"). Governmental functions are those that are enjoined on a municipality by law and are given by the State as a part of the State's sovereignty, to be exercised by the municipality in the interest of the general public, while proprietary functions are those that a municipality may, in its discretion, perform in the interest of the inhabitants of municipality.

In *Wasson Interests, Ltd., v. City of Jacksonville*, No. 14-0645 at 18, (Tex. April 1, 2016), available at <http://docs.texasappellate.com/scotx/op/14-0645/2016-04-01.brown.pdf> ("Wasson") the Texas Supreme Court (the "Court") addressed whether the distinction between governmental and proprietary acts (as found in tort-based causes of action) applies to

breach of contract claims against municipalities. The Court analyzed the rationale behind the Proprietary-Governmental Dichotomy to determine that "a city's proprietary functions are not done pursuant to the 'will of the people'" and protecting such municipalities "via the [S]tate's immunity is not an efficient way to ensure efficient allocation of [S]tate resources". While the Court recognized that the distinction between government and proprietary functions is not clear, the Wasson opinion held that Proprietary-Governmental Dichotomy applies in contract-claims context. The Texas Supreme Court reviewed Wasson again in June 2018 and clarified that to determine whether governmental immunity applies to a breach of contract claim, the proper inquiry is whether the municipality was engaged in a governmental or proprietary function when it entered into the contract, not at the time of the alleged breach. Therefore, in regard to municipal contract cases (as in tort claims), it is incumbent on the courts to determine whether a function was proprietary at the time of conception of the contractual relationship.

Notwithstanding the foregoing new case law issued by the Court, such sovereign immunity issues have not been adjudicated in relation to bond matters (specifically, in regard to the issuance of municipal debt). Each situation will be prospectively evaluated based on the facts and circumstances surrounding the contract in question to determine if a suit, and subsequently, a judgment, is justiciable against a municipality.

If a judgment against the City could be obtained, it could not be enforced by direct levy and execution against the City's property. Further, the registered owners cannot themselves foreclose on property within the City or sell property within the City to enforce the tax lien on taxable property to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds. Furthermore, the City is eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of ad valorem taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the City avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of other federal or state court); and the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Ordinance and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors relative to their creditors or general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion.

## **REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE**

### **Paying Agent/Registrar**

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas. In the Ordinance, the Issuer retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Paying Agent/Registrar is replaced by the Issuer, the new Paying Agent/Registrar shall accept the previous Paying Agent/Registrar's records and act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar, selected at the sole discretion of the Issuer, shall be a national or state banking institution, shall be an association or a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or of any state, authorized under such laws to exercise trust powers, shall be subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authority, and shall be authorized by law to serve as a Paying Agent/Registrar. Upon a change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the Issuer agrees to promptly cause written notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid.

The Bonds will be issued in fully registered form in multiples of \$5,000 for any one stated maturity, and principal and semiannual interest will be paid by the Paying Agent/Registrar. Interest will be paid by check or draft mailed on each interest payment date by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owner at the last known address as it appears on the Paying Agent/Registrar's books or by such other method, acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar, requested by and at the risk and expense of the registered owner. Principal will be paid to the registered owner at stated maturity or earlier redemption upon presentation to the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds shall be a Saturday, Sunday, a legal holiday or a day when banking institutions in the city where the Paying Agent/ Registrar is located are authorized to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not such a day, and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the date payment was due.

### **Record Date**

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the person entitled to the receipt of the interest payable on a Bond on any interest payment date means the fifteenth (15<sup>th</sup>) day of the month next preceding each interest payment date. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar. (See "Special Record Date for Interest Payment" herein.)

### **Special Record Date for Interest Payment**

In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the Issuer. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (the "Special Payment Date" which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

## **Future Registration**

In the event the Bonds are not in the Book-Entry-Only System, the Bonds may be transferred, registered, and assigned on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar only upon presentation and surrender thereof to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bond or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bond being transferred or exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. New Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in denominations of \$5,000 for any one stated maturity or any integral multiple thereof and for a like aggregate principal amount and rate of interest as the Bond or Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein for a description of the system to be utilized in regard to ownership and transferability of the Bonds.)

## **Limitation on Transfer of Bonds**

Neither the City nor the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required to make any such transfer, conversion or exchange (i) during the period commencing with the close of business of any Record Date and ending with the opening of business on the next following principal or interest payment date or (ii) with respect to any Bond or any portion thereof called for redemption prior to maturity, within 45 days prior to its redemption date; provided, however, that such limitation shall not apply to uncalled portions of a Bond redeemed in part.

## **Replacement Bonds**

The Issuer has agreed to replace mutilated, destroyed, lost, or stolen Bonds upon surrender of the mutilated Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, or receipt of satisfactory evidence of such destruction, loss, or theft, and receipt by the Issuer and Paying Agent/Registrar of security or indemnity as may be required by either of them to hold them harmless. The Issuer may require payment of taxes, governmental charges, and other expenses in connection with any such replacement. The person requesting the authentication of and delivery of a replacement Bond must comply with such other reasonable regulations as the Paying Agent/Registrar may prescribe and pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

## **BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM**

This section describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by the Depository Trust Company, New York, New York ("DTC") while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The City, the Financial Advisor, and the Purchasers believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.

The City, the Financial Advisor, and the Purchasers cannot and do not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds, or any notices, to DTC Participants, (2) DTC Participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the applicable series of Bonds), or any notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC Participants are on file with DTC.

DTC will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully registered certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, in the aggregate principal amount of each maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of certificated securities. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). Direct Participants and Indirect Participants are jointly referred to as "Participants". DTC has a S&P Global Ratings rating of "AA+". The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the SEC. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com).



Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of Bonds ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive Bonds representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the book-entry system for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Obligation documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of the notices be provided directly to them.

Neither DTC or Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's Procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to the Issuer as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the Record Date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within an issue are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such issue to be redeemed.

Payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the Issuer or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on the payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC nor its nominee, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the Issuer, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Payments to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) is the responsibility of the Issuer or the Paying Agent/Registrar, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of the Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as securities depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the Issuer or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor securities depository is not obtained, Bonds are required to be printed and delivered to DTC Participants or the Beneficial Owners, as the case may be.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's book-entry system has been obtained from sources that the Issuer and the Purchasers believe to be reliable, but the Issuer, the Financial Advisors and the Purchasers take no responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

#### **Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of this Official Statement**

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Ordinance will be given only to DTC.

#### **Effect of Termination of Book-Entry-Only System**

In the event that the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued by DTC or the use of the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued by the City, printed certificates representing the Bonds will be issued to the holders and the Bonds will be subject to transfer, exchange and registration provisions as set forth in the Ordinance and summarized under "REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE – Future Registration".

### **INVESTMENT POLICIES**

The Issuer invests its investable funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the City Council of the Issuer. Both State law and the Issuer's investment policies are subject to change.

## Legal Investment

Under State law, the Issuer is authorized to invest in (1) obligations of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, including letters of credit; (2) direct obligations of the State of Texas or its agencies and instrumentalities; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States; (4) other obligations, the principal and interest of which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of, the State of Texas or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities; (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "A" or its equivalent; (6) bonds issued, assumed, or guaranteed by the State of Israel; (7) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or their respective successors, or otherwise meeting the requirements of the Texas Public Funds Investment Act; (8) certificates of deposit and share certificates that (i) are issued by or through an institution that has its main office or a branch in Texas and (a) are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or their respective successors, (b) are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (7) above, or (c) secured in any other manner and amount provided by law for Issuer deposits, or (ii) certificates of deposit where (a) the funds are invested by the Issuer through a broker that has its main office or a branch office in the State of Texas and is selected from a list adopted by the Issuer as required by law, or a depository institution that has its main office or a branch office in the State of Texas that is selected by the Issuer; (b) the broker or the depository institution selected by the Issuer arranges for the deposit of the funds in certificates of deposit in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the Issuer, (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States, and (d) the Issuer appoints the depository institution selected under (a) above, an entity as described by Section 2257.041(d) of the Texas Government Code, or a clearing broker-dealer registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission and operating pursuant to Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c3-3 as custodian for the Issuer with respect to the certificates of deposit issued for the account of the Issuer; (9) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that (i) have a defined termination date, (ii) are fully secured by a combination of cash and obligations described in clause (1), (iii) require the securities being purchased by the Issuer or cash held by the Issuer to be pledged to the Issuer, held in the Issuer's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the Issuer or with a third party selected and approved by the Issuer, and (iv) are placed through a primary government securities dealer, as defined by the Federal Reserve, or a financial institution doing business in the State; (10) securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time, and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described in clauses (1) through (7) above, (b) irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than "A" or its equivalent or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (7) above and clauses (12) through (15) below, (ii) securities held as collateral under a loan are pledged to the Issuer, held in the Issuer's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the Issuer or a third party designated by the Issuer, (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State of Texas, and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less; (11) certain bankers' acceptances if the bankers' acceptance (i) has a stated maturity of 270 days or fewer from the date of issuance, (ii) will be, in accordance with its terms, liquidated in full at maturity, (iii) is eligible for collateral for borrowing from a Federal Reserve Bank, and (iv) is accepted by a State or Federal bank, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its holding company (if the accepting bank is the largest subsidiary) are rated at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency; (12) commercial paper with (i) a stated maturity of 270 days or less from the date of issuance, and (ii) a rating of at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by either (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a U.S. or state bank; (13) no-load money market mutual funds that are (i) registered with and regulated by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, (ii) provide the Issuer with a prospectus and other information required by the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934; and (iii) comply with Federal Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 2a-7; (14) no-load mutual funds that are (i) registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, (ii) have an average weighted maturity of less than two years, and (iii) either (a) have a duration of one year or more and are invested exclusively in obligations described in this paragraph, or (b) have a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset-backed securities; (15) investment pools if the Issuer has authorized investment in the particular pool and the pool invests solely in investments permitted by the Texas Public Funds Investment Act, and is continuously rated no lower than "AAA" or "AAA-m" or at an equivalent rating by at least one nationally recognized rating service; and (16) guaranteed investment contracts that (i) have a defined termination date, (ii) are secured by obligations which meet the requirements of the Texas Public Funds Investment Act in an amount at least equal to the amount of bond proceeds invested under such contract, and (iii) are pledged to the Issuer and deposited with the Issuer or with a third party selected and approved by the Issuer.

The Issuer may also contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term up to two years, but the Issuer retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the Issuer must do so by order, ordinance, or resolution. The Issuer is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations that have a final stated maturity of greater than 10 years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

## Investment Policies

Under State law, the Issuer is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that

include a list of authorized investments for Issuer funds, the maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment and the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups. All Issuer funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

Under State law, the Issuer's investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived." At least quarterly the investment officers of the Issuer must submit an investment report to the City Council detailing: (1) the investment position of the Issuer, (2) that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, and any additions and changes to market value and the ending value of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the beginning and end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the investment portfolio as it relates to: (a) the investment strategy expressed in the Issuer's investment policy, and (b) the Public Funds Investment Act. No person may invest Issuer funds without express written authority from the City Council.

**Additional Provisions**

Under State law, the Issuer is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies, (2) adopt an order or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in said order or resolution, (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the entity to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the Issuer; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the Issuer to: (a) receive and review the Issuer's investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the Issuer and the business organization that are not authorized by the Issuer's investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the Issuer's entire portfolio or requires an interpretation of subjective investment standards), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the Issuer and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) perform an annual audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the Issuer's investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer, or other investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse repurchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 80% of the Issuer's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service and further restrict the investment in non-money market mutual funds of any portion of bond proceeds, reserves and funds held for debt service and to no more than 15% of the Issuer's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service and further restrict the investment in no-load money market mutual funds of any portion of bond proceeds reserves and funds held for debt service to no more than 15% of the entity's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to confirm to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements, and (10) at least annually review, revise, and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the Issuer.

**Current Investments <sup>(1)</sup>**

**TABLE 1**

As of March 31, 2018 the City held investments as follows:

<u>Type of Security</u>	<u>Market Value</u>	<u>Percentage of Total</u>
Cash and Investment Pool	\$ 9,662,809	11.30%
Logic	23,284,598	27.23%
U.S. Agency Securities	3,112,880	3.64%
Certificates of Deposit	4,177,577	4.87%
Texas Class	22,847,442	26.72%
First Public	22,436,786	26.24%
	<u>\$ 85,522,092</u>	<u>100.00%</u>

As of such date, the market value of such investments (as determined by the Issuer by reference to published quotations, dealer bids, and comparable information) was approximately 100% of their book value. No funds of the Issuer are invested in derivative securities, *i.e.*, securities whose rate of return is determined by reference to some other instrument, index, or commodity.

<sup>(1)</sup> Unaudited.

**AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES**

**Property Tax Code and County-Wide Appraisal District**

The Texas Property Tax Code (the "Tax Code") provides for county-wide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State of Texas an appraisal district and an appraisal review board responsible for appraising property for all taxable units within the county. The Guadalupe Appraisal District (the "Appraisal District") is responsible for appraising property within the City generally as of January 1 of each year. Small portions of the City are also located in Bexar and Comal Counties, Texas. The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District are subject to review and change by the Guadalupe Appraisal Review Board (the "Appraisal Review Board") which is appointed by the Appraisal District. Such appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by the Issuer in establishing its tax roll and tax rate.

## **Property Subject to Taxation by the Issuer**

Except for certain exemptions provided by Texas law, all real and certain tangible personal property with a tax situs in the City are subject to taxation by the Issuer. Principal categories of exempt property (including certain exemptions which are subject to local option by the City Council) include property owned by the State of Texas or its political subdivisions if the property is used for public purposes; property exempt from ad valorem taxation by federal law; certain improvements to real property and certain tangible personal property located in designated reinvestment zones on which the Issuer has agreed to abate ad valorem taxes, certain household goods, family supplies and personal effects; farm products owned by the producers; certain property of a non-profit corporation used in scientific research and educational activities benefiting a college or university, and designated historical sites. Other principal categories of exempt property include tangible personal property not held or used for production of income, solar and wind-powered energy devices; most individually owned automobiles; certain varying amounts of valuation attributable to residential homesteads of persons ages 65 or over and property of disabled veterans or their surviving spouses or children; and certain classes of intangible property. Owners of agricultural and open space land, under certain circumstances, may request valuation of such land on the basis of productive capacity rather than market value.

The State of Texas approved a constitutional amendment authorizing counties, cities, towns or junior college districts to establish an ad valorem "tax freeze" on residence homesteads of the disabled and persons sixty-five years of age or older. This "tax freeze" can be implemented by official action of a governing body, or pursuant to an election called by the governing body upon receipt of a petition signed by 5% of registered voters of the political subdivision. **On November 2, 2004 the City approved an election granting the "tax freeze."**

If the tax limitation is established, the total amount of ad valorem taxes imposed by the City on a homestead that receives the exemption may not be increased while it remains the residence homestead of that person or that person's spouse who is disabled or sixty-five years of age or older, except to the extent the value of the homestead is increased by improvements other than repairs. If a disabled or elderly person dies in a year in which the person received a residence homestead exemption, the total amount of ad valorem taxes imposed on the homestead by the taxing unit may not be increased while it remains the residence homestead of that person's surviving spouse if the spouse is (1) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (2) the surviving spouse was at least 55 years of age at the time of the death of the individual's spouse, and (3) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse. In addition, the Texas Legislature by general law may provide for the transfer of all or a proportionate amount of the tax limitation applicable to a person's homestead to be transferred to the new homestead of such person if the person moves to a different residence within the taxing unit. Once established, the governing body of the taxing unit may not repeal or rescind the tax limitation.

## **Valuation of Property for Taxation**

Generally, property in the City must be appraised by the Appraisal District at market value as of January 1 of each year. Once an appraisal roll is prepared and finally approved by the Appraisal Review Board, it is used by the Issuer in establishing its tax rolls and tax rate. Assessments under the Tax Code are to be based on one hundred percent (100%) of market value, except as described below, and no assessment ratio can be applied.

State law requires the appraised value of a residence homestead to be based solely on the property's value as a residence homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a residence homestead for a tax year to an amount not to exceed the lesser of (1) the market value of the property or (2) the sum of (a) 10% of the appraised value of the property for the last year in which the property was appraised for taxation times the number of years since the property was last appraised, plus (b) the appraised value of the property for the last year in which the property was appraised plus (c) the market value of all new improvements to the property.

Article VIII of the Texas Constitution and the Tax Code permits land designated for agricultural use (Section 1-d), open space or timberland (Section 1-d-1) to be appraised at the lesser of its value based on the land's capacity to produce agricultural or timber products or its market value. Landowners wishing to avail themselves of the agricultural use designation must apply for the designation, and the appraiser is required by the Tax Code to act on each claimant's right to the designation individually. If a claimant receives the agricultural use designation and later loses it by changing the use of the property or selling it to an unqualified owner, the Issuer can collect taxes based on the new value, including three (3) years for agricultural use and five (5) years for agricultural open space land and timberland prior to the loss of the designation. The same land may not be qualified under both Section 1-d and 1-d-1.

The Tax Code requires the Appraisal District to implement a plan for periodic reappraisal of property to update appraisal values. The plan must provide for appraisal of all real property in the Appraisal District at least once every three (3) years. The Issuer, at its expense, has the right to obtain from the Appraisal District a current estimate of appraised values within the City or an estimate of any new property or improvements within the City. While such current estimate of appraised values may serve to indicate the rate and extent of growth of taxable values within the City, it cannot be used for establishing a tax rate within the City until such time as the Appraisal District chooses to formally include such values on its appraisal roll.

## **Residential Homestead Exemptions**

Under Section 1-b, Article VIII of the Texas Constitution, and State law, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant:

1. An exemption of not less than \$10,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older and the disabled from all ad valorem taxes thereafter levied by the political subdivision. **The Issuer has elected to grant \$10,000 for persons 65 years of age or older and \$3,000 for the disabled.**

2. An exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads; minimum exemption \$5,000. **The Issuer has not elected to grant this additional exemption.**

In the case of residence homestead exemptions granted under Section 1-b, Article VIII, ad valorem taxes may continue to be levied against the value of homesteads exempted where ad valorem taxes have previously been pledged for the payment of debt if cessation of the levy would impair the obligation of the contract by which the debt was created.

State law and Section 2, Article VIII, mandate an additional property tax exemption for disabled veterans or the surviving spouse or children of a deceased veteran who died while on active duty in the armed forces; the exemption applies to either real or personal property with the amount of assessed valuation exempted ranging from \$5,000 to a maximum of \$12,000.

A disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until such surviving spouse remarries.

A partially disabled veteran or the surviving spouse of a partially disabled veteran is entitled to an exemption equal to the percentage of the veteran's disability, if the residence was donated to the disabled veteran by a charitable organization at no cost to the disabled veteran, or at some cost to the disabled veteran in the form of a cash payment, a mortgage, or both in an aggregate amount that is not more than 50% of the good faith estimate of the market value of the residence homestead made by the charitable organization as of the date the donation is made. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

Also, the surviving spouse of a member of the armed forces who is killed in action is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or a part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the service member's death and said property was the service member's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

The surviving spouse of a first responder who is killed or fatally injured in the line of duty is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the service member's death and said property was the service member's residence homestead at the time of the death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

### **Freeport Goods and Goods-In-Transit Exemption**

Article VIII, Section 1-j of the Texas Constitution provides for an exemption from ad valorem taxation for "freeport property," which is defined as goods detained in the state for 175 days or less for the purpose of assembly, storage, manufacturing, processing or fabrication. Taxing units that took action prior to April 1, 1990 may continue to tax freeport property and decisions to continue to tax freeport property may be reversed in the future. However, decisions to exempt freeport property are not subject to reversal. In addition, effective for tax years 2008 and thereafter, Article VIII, Section 1-n of the Texas Constitution provides for an exemption from taxation for "goods-in-transit", which are defined as personal property acquired or imported into the state and transported to another location inside or outside the state within 175 days of the date the property was acquired or imported into the state. The exemption excludes oil, natural gas, petroleum products, aircraft and special inventory, including motor vehicle, vessel and out-board motor, heavy equipment and manufactured housing inventory. After holding a public hearing, a taxing unit may take action by January 1 of the year preceding a tax year to tax goods-in-transit during the following tax year. A taxpayer may obtain only a freeport exemption or a goods-in-transit exemption for items of personal property. The City took official action before April 1, 1990 to tax freeport property. On October 23, 2007 the City adopted an ordinance that continued the taxation of all goods-in-transit for the tax year 2008 and beyond. Senate Bill 1, passed by the 82nd Texas Legislature, 1st Called Session, requires again that the governmental entities take affirmative action after October 1 of the prior year but before January 1 of the first tax year in which the governing body proposes to tax goods-in-transit in the 2012 tax year and beyond. **On November 29, 2011, the City Council took official action to again tax goods-in-transit.**

### **Pollution Control**

Article VIII, Section 1-l, provides for the exemption from ad valorem taxation of certain property used to control the pollution of air, water, or land. A person is entitled to an exemption from taxation of all or part of real and personal property that the person owns and that is used wholly or partly as a facility, device or method for the control of air, water or land pollution.

## **Tax Abatement**

The Issuer may designate areas within the City as a reinvestment zone. Thereafter, the Issuer may enter into tax abatement agreements with owners of property within the zone. Prior to entering into a tax abatement agreement, each entity must adopt guidelines and criteria for establishing tax abatement, which each entity with taxing authority over the property will follow in granting tax abatement to owners of property. The tax abatement agreement may exempt from ad valorem taxation by each of the applicable taxing jurisdictions, including the Issuer, for a period of up to ten (10) years, all or any part of any increase in the assessed valuation of property covered by the agreement over its assessed valuation in the year in which the agreement is executed, on the condition that the property owner make specified improvements or repairs to the property in conformity with the terms of the tax abatement. The terms of all tax abatement agreements must be substantially the same. The City currently has three tax abatements: Capital Group will expire in 2019, Amazon.com will expire in 2019 and Caterpillar phase 1 will expire in 2020.

## **Tax Increment Reinvestment (Financing) Zones**

The City, by action of the City Council, may create one or more tax increment reinvestment zones ("TIRZs" or "TIFs") within the City, and in doing so, other overlapping taxing entities may agree to contribute taxes levied against the "Incremental Value" in the TIRZ to finance or pay for public improvements or projects within the TIRZ. At the time of the creation of the TIRZ, a "base value" for the real property in the TIRZ is established and the difference between any increase in the assessed valuation of taxable real property in the TIRZ in excess of the base value of taxable real property in the TIRZ is known as the "Incremental Value", and during the existence of the TIRZ, all or a portion (as determined by the City) of the taxes levied by the City against the Incremental Value in the TIRZ are restricted to paying project and financing costs within the TIRZ and are not available for the payment of other obligations of the City. The City has created 2 TIRZ/TIF Zones. The City is a principal in the City of Schertz Tax Increment Reinvestment Zone #2 (the "Zone"), pursuant to Chapter 311 of the Texas Tax Code, as amended. Under the terms of the agreement, the City, Bexar County, and the San Antonio River Authority ("the "Parties") are funding infrastructure improvements through tax increment financing to the Sedona Development Project. Project costs of the developer will be funded up to 100% of the tax increment generated by the Parties. The Zone has a statutory termination date of December 31, 2027.

## **Economic Development Programs of Grants and Loans**

The City's are also authorized, pursuant to Chapter 380, Texas Local Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 380"), to establish programs to promote state or local economic development and to stimulate business and commercial activity in the City. In accordance with a program established pursuant to Chapter 380, the City may make loans or grants of public funds for economic development purposes, however no obligations secured by ad valorem taxes may be issued for such purposes unless approved by voters of the City. The City has entered into various 380 agreements with businesses in the City. These agreements involve rebates of future ad valorem taxes and/or sales taxes and should not have a significant impact on current tax in future years. Once the terms of the 380 agreements expire, the tax base of the City will be increased to include the new businesses of the City.

## **Issuer and Taxpayer Remedies**

Under certain circumstances, taxpayers and taxing units, including the Issuer, may appeal the orders of the Appraisal Review Board by filing a timely petition for review in district court within 45 days after notice is received that a final order has been entered. In such event, the property value in question may be determined by the court, or by a jury, if requested by any party, or through binding arbitration, if requested by the taxpayer. Additionally, taxing units may bring suit against the Appraisal District to compel compliance with the Tax Code.

The Tax Code sets forth notice and hearing procedures for certain tax rate increases by the Issuer and provides for taxpayer referenda that could result in the repeal of certain tax increases. The Tax Code also establishes a procedure for notice to property owners of reappraisals reflecting increased property value, appraisals which are higher than renditions, and appraisals of property not previously on an appraisal roll.

## **The Financial Institutions Act of 1989**

The "Financial Institutions Reform, Recovery and Enforcement Act of 1989" ("FIRREA"), enacted on August 9, 1989, contains certain provisions which affect the time for protesting property valuations, the fixing of tax liens and the collection of penalties and interest on delinquent taxes on real property owned by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC").

Under FIRREA, real property held by the FDIC is still subject to ad valorem taxation, but such act states that (i) no real property of the FDIC shall be subject to foreclosure or sale without the consent of the FDIC and no involuntary lien shall attach to such property, (ii) the FDIC shall not be liable for any penalties or fines, including those arising from the failure to pay any real property tax when due, (iii) no personal property owned by FDIC is subject to ad valorem taxation, and (iv) notwithstanding failure of a person to challenge an appraisal in accordance with State law, such value shall be determined as of the period for which such tax is imposed.

As of the date hereof, the Issuer is not aware of any significant properties in the City which are under the control of the FDIC, however, real property could come under their control while acting as the receiver of an insolvent financial institution. Accordingly, to the extent the FIRREA provisions are valid and applicable to property in the City, and to the extent that the FDIC attempts to enforce the same, the provisions may affect the time at which the Issuer can collect taxes on property owned by the FDIC, if any, in the City.

## Levy and Collection of Taxes

The Issuer is responsible for the levy and collection of its taxes unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental entity. Before the later of September 30th or the 60th day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, the rate of taxation is set by the Issuer based upon the valuation of property within the City as of the preceding January 1. Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever comes later, and become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty of six percent (6%) of the amount of the tax for the first calendar month it is delinquent, plus one percent (1%) for each additional month or portion of a month the tax remains unpaid prior to July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent. If the tax is not paid by July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent, the tax incurs a total penalty of twelve percent (12%) regardless of the number of months the tax has been delinquent and incurs an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) if imposed by the Issuer. The delinquent tax also accrues interest at a rate of one percent (1%) for each month or portion of a month it remains unpaid. The Tax Code also makes provision for the split payment of taxes, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes under certain circumstances. **The Issuer does not allow split payments but does allow discounts for early payment.**

## Issuer's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies

Taxes levied by the Issuer are a personal obligation of the owner of the property as of January 1 of the year for which the tax is imposed. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all state and local taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The lien exists in favor of the State of Texas and each local taxing unit, including the Issuer, having power to tax the property. The Issuer's tax lien is on a parity with tax liens of such other taxing units. A tax lien on real property takes priority over the claim of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien; however, whether a lien of the United States is on a parity with or takes priority over a tax lien of the Issuer is determined by applicable federal law. Personal property, under certain circumstances, is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest.

At any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the Issuer may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the Issuer must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property. Collection of delinquent taxes may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, by the effects of market conditions on the foreclosure sale price, by taxpayer redemption rights (a taxpayer may redeem property within two (2) years after the purchaser's deed issued at the foreclosure sale is filed in the City records) or by bankruptcy proceedings which restrict the collection of taxpayer debts. Federal bankruptcy law provides that an automatic stay of actions by creditors and other entities, including governmental units, goes into effect with the filing of any petition in bankruptcy. The automatic stay prevents governmental units from foreclosing on property and prevents liens for post-petition taxes from attaching to property and obtaining secured creditor status unless, in either case, an order lifting the stay is obtained from the bankruptcy court. In many cases, post-petition taxes are paid as an administrative expense of the estate in bankruptcy or by order of the bankruptcy court.

## Property Assessment and Tax Payment

Property within the City is generally assessed as of January 1 of each year. Business inventory may, at the option of the taxpayer, be assessed as of September 1. Oil and gas reserves are assessed on the basis of a pricing information in either the standard edition of the Annual Energy Outlook or, if the most recently published edition of the Annual Energy Outlook was published before December 1 of the preceding calendar year, the Short-Term Energy Outlook report published in January of the current calendar year. Taxes become due October 1 of the same year, and become delinquent on February 1 of the following year. Taxpayers 65 years old or older are permitted by State law to pay taxes on homesteads in four installments with the first installment due on February 1 of each year and the final installment due on August 1.

## TAX RATE LIMITATIONS

### General

Article XI, Section 5 of the Texas Constitution, applicable to cities of more than 5,000 population: limits the City's maximum ad valorem tax rate to \$2.50 per \$100 assessed valuation. The Issuer has adopted a Home Rule Charter which does not limit the City's maximum tax rate limit beyond the Constitutional limit of \$2.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation for all Issuer purposes. No direct funded debt limitation is imposed on the City under current Texas law. The Texas Attorney General has adopted an administrative policy that generally prohibits the issuance of debt by a municipality, such as the City, if its issuance produces debt service requirements exceeding that which can be paid from \$1.50 of the foregoing \$2.50 maximum tax rate calculated at 90% collection. The issuance of the Bonds does not violate this constitutional provision or the Texas Attorney General's administrative policy.

### The Property Tax Code

Before the later of September 30<sup>th</sup> or the 60<sup>th</sup> day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, the City Council must adopt a tax rate per \$100 taxable value for the current year. The tax rate consists of two components: (1) a rate for funding of maintenance and operation expenditures, and (2) a rate for debt service.

The City must annually calculate and publicize its "effective tax rate" and "rollback tax rate". The City Council may not adopt a tax rate that exceeds the lower of the rollback rate or 103% of the effective tax rate until it has held a public hearing on the proposed increase following notice to the taxpayers and otherwise complied with the Property Tax Code. If the adopted tax rate exceeds the rollback tax rate, the qualified voters of the City, by petition, may require that an election be held to determine whether or not to reduce the tax rate adopted for the current year to the rollback tax rate.

"Effective tax rate" means the rate that will produce last year's total tax levy (adjusted) from this year's total taxable

values (adjusted). "Adjusted" means lost values are not included in the calculation of last year's taxes and new values are not included in this year's taxable values.

"Rollback tax rate" means the rate that will produce last year's maintenance and operation tax levy (adjusted) from this year's values (unadjusted) multiplied by 1.08 plus a rate that will produce this year's debt service from this year's values (adjusted) divided by the anticipated tax collection rate.

Reference is made to the Property Tax Code for definitive requirements for the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes and the calculation of the various defined tax rates.

The Property Tax Code provides certain cities and counties in the State the option of assessing a maximum one-half percent (1/2%) sales tax on retail sales of taxable items for the purpose of reducing its ad valorem taxes, if approved by a majority of the voters in a local option election. If the additional tax is approved and levied, the ad valorem property tax levy must be reduced by the amount of the estimated sales tax revenues to be generated in the current year. Further, the Property Tax Code provides certain cities the option of assessing a maximum one-half percent (1/2%) sales tax on retail sales of taxable items for economic development purposes, if approved by a majority of the voters in a local option election. In addition, the Issuer has approved an additional one-half cent sales tax for economic development, effective July 1, 2004. The Issuer has authorized the additional sales tax for economic development at the rate of 3/8%.

## **TAX MATTERS**

### **Tax Exemption**

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the opinion of Bond Counsel to the effect that interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes (1) will be excludable from gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date of such opinion (the "Code"), pursuant to section 103 of the Code and existing regulations, published rulings, and court decisions, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof who are individuals or, except as hereinafter described, corporations. A form of Bond Counsel's opinion is reproduced as APPENDIX C. The statutes, regulations, rulings, and court decisions on which such opinion is based are subject to change.

For taxable years that began before January 1, 2018, interest on the Bonds owned by a corporation will be included in such corporation's adjusted current earnings for purposes of computing the alternative minimum tax on such corporation, other than an S corporation, a qualified mutual fund, a real estate investment trust, a real estate mortgage investment conduit, or a financial asset securitization investment trust ("FASIT"). The alternative minimum tax on corporations has been repealed for taxable years beginning on or after January 1, 2018.

In rendering the foregoing opinions, Bond Counsel will rely upon the Sufficiency Certificate and upon the representations and certifications of the City pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds and will assume continuing compliance by the City with the provisions of the Ordinance subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds. The Ordinance contains covenants by the City with respect to, among other matters, the use of the proceeds of the Bonds and the facilities financed therewith by persons other than state or local governmental units, the manner in which the proceeds of the Bonds are to be invested, the periodic calculation and payment to the United States Treasury of arbitrage "profits" from the investment of proceeds, and the reporting of certain information to the United States Treasury. Failure to comply with any of these covenants may cause interest on the Bonds to be includable in the gross income of the owners thereof from the date of the issuance of the Bonds.

Bond Counsel's opinion is not a guarantee of a result, but represents its legal judgment based upon its review of existing statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions and the representations and covenants of the City described above. No ruling has been sought from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") with respect to the matters addressed in the opinion of Bond Counsel, and Bond Counsel's opinion is not binding on the IRS. The IRS has an ongoing program of auditing the tax-exempt status of the interest on tax-exempt obligations. If an audit of the Bonds is commenced, under current procedures the IRS is likely to treat the City as the "taxpayer," and the owners of the Bonds would have no right to participate in the audit process. In responding to or defending an audit of the tax-exempt status of the interest on the Bonds, the City may have different or conflicting interests from the owners of the Bonds. Public awareness of any future audit of the Bonds could adversely affect the value and liquidity of the Bonds during the pendency of the audit, regardless of its ultimate outcome.

Except as described above, Bond Counsel expresses no other opinion with respect to any other federal, state or local tax consequences under present law, or proposed legislation, resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Bonds. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should be aware that the ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit, owners of an interest in a FASIT, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations. Prospective purchasers should consult their own tax advisors as to the applicability of these consequences to their particular circumstances.

Existing law may change to reduce or eliminate the benefit to bondholders of the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Any proposed legislation or administrative action, whether or not taken, could also affect the value



and marketability of the Bonds. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to any proposed or future changes in tax law.

### **Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount and Premium on Certain Bonds**

The initial public offering price of certain Bonds (the "Discount Bonds") may be less than the amount payable on such Bonds at maturity. An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Discount Certificate (assuming that a substantial amount of the Discount Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and the amount payable at maturity constitutes original issue discount to the initial purchaser of such Discount Certificate. A portion of such original issue discount allocable to the holding period of such Discount Certificate by the initial purchaser will, upon the disposition of such Discount Certificate (including by reason of its payment at maturity), be treated as interest excludable from gross income, rather than as taxable gain, for federal income tax purposes, on the same terms and conditions as those for other interest on the Bonds described above under "Tax Exemption." Such interest is considered to be accrued actuarially in accordance with the constant interest method over the life of a Discount Certificate, taking into account the semiannual compounding of accrued interest, at the yield to maturity on such Discount Certificate and generally will be allocated to an initial purchaser in a different amount from the amount of the payment denominated as interest actually received by the initial purchaser during the tax year.

However, such interest may be required to be taken into account in determining the alternative minimum tax on corporations for taxable years that began before January 1, 2018 and the amount of the branch profits tax applicable to certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment. In addition, the accrual of such interest may result in certain other collateral federal income tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit, owners of an interest in a FASIT, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations. Moreover, in the event of the redemption, sale or other taxable disposition of a Discount Certificate by the initial owner prior to maturity, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Discount Certificate in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Discount Certificate was held) is includable in gross income.

Owners of Discount Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination of accrued original issue discount on Discount Bonds for federal income tax purposes and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Discount Bonds. It is possible that, under applicable provisions governing determination of state and local income taxes, accrued interest on Discount Bonds may be deemed to be received in the year of accrual even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment.

The initial public offering price of certain Bonds (the "Premium Bonds") may be greater than the amount payable on such Bonds at maturity. An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Premium Certificate (assuming that a substantial amount of the Premium Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and the amount payable at maturity constitutes premium to the initial purchaser of such Premium Bonds. The basis for federal income tax purposes of a Premium Certificate in the hands of such initial purchaser must be reduced each year by the amortizable certificate premium, although no federal income tax deduction is allowed as a result of such reduction in basis for amortizable certificate premium. Such reduction in basis will increase the amount of any gain (or decrease the amount of any loss) to be recognized for federal income tax purposes upon a sale or other taxable disposition of a Premium Certificate. The amount of premium which is amortizable each year by an initial purchaser is determined by using such purchaser's yield to maturity.

Purchasers of the Premium Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination of amortizable certificate premium on Premium Bonds for federal income tax purposes and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Premium Bonds.

### **CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION**

In the Ordinance, the City has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. The City is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under these agreements, the City will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of certain specified events, to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (the "MSRB"). The information provided to the MSRB will be available to the public free of charge via the Electronic Municipal market Access ("EMMA") system through an internet website accessible at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org) as described below under "Availability of Information".

### **Annual Reports**

Under State law, including, but not limited to, Chapter 103, as amended, Texas Local Government Code, the City must keep its fiscal records in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, must have its financial accounts and records audited by a certified public accountant and must maintain each audit report within 180 days after the close of the City's fiscal year. The City's fiscal records and audit reports are available for public inspection during the regular business hours, and the City is required to provide a copy of the City's audit reports to any bondholder or other member of the public within a reasonable time on request to City Secretary, 1400 Schertz Parkway, Schertz, Texas, 78154 and upon payment of charges prescribed by the Texas General Services Commission.

The City will file certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB annually. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the City of the general obligation type included in Tables 1 through 13 of APPENDIX A to this Official Statement, and in APPENDIX D. The City will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year ending in and after 2018. The City will provide the updated information to the MSRB in an electronic format, which will be available through EMMA to the general public without charge.

The City may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly available documents, as permitted by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission's Rule 15c2-12 (the "Rule"). The updated information will include audited financial statements, if the City commissions an audit and it is completed by the required time. If audited financial statements are not available by the required time, the City will provide unaudited financial statements by the required time, and will provide audited financial statements when and if the audit report becomes available. Any such financial statements will be prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in APPENDIX D or such other accounting principles as the City may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to state law or regulation.

The City's current fiscal year end is September 30. Accordingly, it must provide updated information by the last day of March 31 in each year following the end of its fiscal year, unless the City changes its fiscal year. If the City changes its fiscal year, it will file notice of such change with the MSRB through EMMA.

### **Notice of Certain Events**

The City will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. The City will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds to the MSRB in a timely manner (but not in excess of ten business days after the occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds, as the case may be; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the City, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the City or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) appointment of a successor or additional paying agent/registrars or the change of name of a paying agent/registrars, if material. In addition, the City will provide timely notice of any failure by the City to provide annual financial information in accordance with their agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

For these purposes, any event described in clause (12) in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the City in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the City, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the City. Neither the Bonds nor the Ordinance make any provision for debt service reserve funds, credit enhancement or liquidity enhancement. In addition, the City will provide timely notice of any failure by the City to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports". The City will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB.

### **Availability of Information**

Effective July 1, 2009, the SEC implemented amendments to the Rule which approved the establishment by the MSRB of EMMA, which is now the sole successor to the national municipal securities information repositories with respect to filings made in connection with undertakings made under the Rule. All information and documentation filing required to be made by the City in accordance with its undertaking made for the Bonds will be made with the MSRB in electronic format in accordance with MSRB guidelines. Access to such filings will be provided, without charge to the general public, by the MSRB.

With respect to debt of the City issued prior to the EMMA Effective Date, the City remains obligated to make annual required filings, as well as notices of material events, under its continuing disclosure obligations relating to those debt obligations (which includes a continuing obligation to make such filings with the Texas state information depository (the "SID")). Prior to EMMA Effective Date, the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas (the "MAC") had been designated by the State and approved by the SEC staff as a qualified SID. Subsequent to the EMMA Effective Date, the MAC entered into a Subscription Agreement with the MSRB pursuant to which the MSRB makes available to the MAC, in electronic format, all Texas-issuer continuing disclosure documents and related information posted to EMMA's website simultaneously with such posting. Until the City receives notice of a change in this contractual agreement between the MAC and EMMA or of a failure of either party to perform as specified thereunder, the City has determined, in reliance on guidance from the MAC, that making its continuing disclosure filings solely with the MSRB will satisfy its obligations to make filings with the SID pursuant to its continuing disclosure agreements entered into prior to the EMMA Effective Date.

## Limitations and Amendments

The City has agreed to update information and to provide notices of certain specified events only as described above. The City has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The City makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The City disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders or Beneficial Owners of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the City to comply with its agreement.

The City may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the City, if the agreement, as amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Bonds in the offering described herein in compliance with the Rule and either the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent or any person unaffiliated with the City (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the holders or beneficial owners of the Bonds. If the City amends its agreement, it must include with the next financial information and operating data provided in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of information and data provided. The City may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of the Rule or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent any Purchasers from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds, respectively, in the primary offering of the Bonds.

## Compliance with Prior Agreements

During the past five years, the City has complied in all material respects with its previous continuing disclosure agreements made in accordance with the Rule.

On May 28, 2014, S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") upgraded the City's existing general obligation debt from "AA" to "AA+". The notice was filed in a timely matter; however, the notice was posted to the City's Utility CUSIP instead of to the City's General Obligation CUSIP. The notice was refiled on November 16, 2015 to the correct CUSIP.

Additionally, the City's audits for fiscal years ending 2013, 2014, 2016, and 2017 were timely filed; however, they were not linked to the CUSIP associated with the Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation. A corrective filing was made on October 2, 2018 to properly link the CUSIPs

## LEGAL MATTERS

### Legal Opinions and No-Litigation Certificate

The Issuer will furnish the Purchasers with a complete transcript of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Bonds, including the unqualified approving legal opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas to the effect that the Initial Bond is a valid and legally binding obligation of the Issuer, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approval of certain legal matters by Bond Counsel, to the effect that the Bonds, issued in compliance with the provisions of the Ordinance, are valid and legally binding obligations of the Issuer and, subject to the qualifications set forth herein under "TAX MATTERS", the interest on the Bonds is exempt from federal income taxation under existing statutes, published rulings, regulations, and court decisions. Though it represents the Financial Advisor from time to time in matters unrelated to the issuance of the Bonds, Bond Counsel was engaged by, and only represents, the City in connection with the issuance of the Bonds. In its capacity as Bond Counsel, Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas has reviewed (except for numerical, statistical and technical data) the information under the captions "THE BONDS" (except under the subcaptions, "Use of Bond Proceeds", "Sources and Uses", "Payment Record", and "Default and Remedies", as to which no opinion is expressed), "REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE", "TAX MATTERS", "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" (except under the subheading "Compliance with Prior Undertakings" as to which no opinion is expressed), "LEGAL MATTERS—Legal Investments and Eligibility to Secure Public Funds in Texas", and "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION—Registration and Qualification of Bonds for Sale" in the Official Statement and such firm is of the opinion that the information relating to the Bonds and the Ordinance contained under such captions is a fair and accurate summary of the information purported to be shown and that the information and descriptions contained under such captions relating to the provisions of applicable state and federal laws are correct as to matters of law. The customary closing papers, including a certificate to the effect that no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending to restrain the issuance and delivery of the Bonds or which would affect the provision made for their payment or security, or in any manner questioning the validity of the Bonds will also be furnished. The legal fees to be paid Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of Bonds are contingent on the sale and initial delivery of the Bonds. The legal opinion of Bond Counsel will accompany the Bonds deposited with DTC or will be printed on the definitive Bonds in the event of the discontinuance of the Book-Entry-Only System.

The various legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

## **Litigation**

In the opinion of various officials of the Issuer, there is no litigation or other proceeding pending against or, to their knowledge, threatened against the Issuer in any court, agency, or administrative body (either state or federal) wherein an adverse decision would materially adversely affect the financial condition of the Issuer.

## **Legal Investments and Eligibility to Secure Public Funds in Texas**

State law provides that obligations, such as the Bonds, are eligible to secure deposits of the state, its agencies, and political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value. For political subdivisions in Texas which have adopted investment policies and guidelines in accordance with the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256, as amended, Texas Government Code) the Bonds may have to be assigned a rating of at least "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency before such Bonds are eligible investments for sinking funds and other public funds. (See "OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION - Rating" herein.)

The City has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The City has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

## **FORWARD LOOKING STATEMENTS**

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the City, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the City's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the City on the date hereof, and the City assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the City's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal, and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the City. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement will prove to be accurate.

## **OTHER PERTINENT INFORMATION**

### **Registration and Qualification of Bonds for Sale**

The sale of the Bonds has not been registered under the Federal Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2); and the Bonds have not been qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein; or have the Bonds been qualified under the securities acts of any jurisdiction. The Issuer assumes no responsibility for qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchasers to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The City agrees to cooperate, at the Purchasers' written request and sole expense, in registering or qualifying the Bonds or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary; provided, however, that the City shall not be required to qualify as a foreign corporation or to execute a general consent to service of process in any jurisdiction.

### **Rating**

A municipal bond rating application for the Bonds has been made to S&P Global Ratings ("S&P"). The outcome of the results will be made available as soon as possible. An explanation of the significance of such rating may be obtained from S&P. The rating of the Bonds by S&P reflect only the views of S&P at the time the rating is given, and the Issuer makes no representations as to the appropriateness of the rating. There is no assurance that the rating will continue for any given period of time, or that the rating will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by S&P, if, in the judgment of S&P, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revisions or withdrawals of the rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

### **Authenticity of Financial Information**

The financial data and other information contained herein have been obtained from the Issuer's records, audited financial statements and other sources that are believed to be reliable. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents, and the Ordinance contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents, and the Ordinance. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such documents for

further information. All information contained in this Official Statement is subject, in all respects, to the complete body of information contained in the original sources thereof and no guaranty, warranty or other representation is made concerning the accuracy or completeness of the information herein. In particular, no opinion or representation is rendered as to whether any projection will approximate actual results, and all opinions, estimates and assumptions, whether or not expressly identified as such, should not be considered statements of fact.

References to web site addresses presented herein are for informational purposes only and may be in the form of a hyperlink solely for the reader's convenience. Unless specified otherwise, such web sites and the information or links contained therein are not incorporated into, and are not part of, this Official Statement for purposes of, and as that term is defined in, SEC Rule 15c2-12.

**Financial Advisor**

SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is employed as a Financial Advisor to the Issuer in connection with the issuance of the Bonds. In this capacity, the Financial Advisor has compiled certain data relating to the Bonds and has assisted in drafting this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has not independently verified any of the data contained herein or conducted a detailed investigation of the affairs of the Issuer to determine the accuracy or completeness of this Official Statement. Because of its limited participation, the Financial Advisor assumes no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of any of the information contained herein. The fees for the Financial Advisor are contingent upon the issuance, sale and delivery of the Bonds.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with its responsibilities to the Issuer and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

**Winning Bidder**

After requesting competitive bids for the Bonds, the City accepted the bid of \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Purchasers") to purchase the Bonds at the interest rates shown on the page 2 of this Official Statement at a price of par, plus a net original issue reoffering premium of \$\_\_\_\_\_, plus accrued interest on the Bonds from their Dated Date to their date of initial delivery. The City can give no assurance that any trading market will be developed for the City after their sale by the City to the Purchasers. The City has no control over the price at which the Bonds are subsequently sold and the initial yield at which the Bonds will be priced and reoffered will be established by and will be the responsibility of the Purchasers.

**Certification of the Official Statement**

At the time of payment for and delivery of the Bonds, the Purchasers will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officers of the City, acting in their official capacity, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the City contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of the Bonds and the receipt of the bids therefor, and on the date of the delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the City and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements, including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the City, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the City believes to be reliable and the City has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; and (d) there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the City since the date of the last audited financial statements of the City.

**Authorization of the Official Statement**

The Official Statement will be approved as to form and content and the use thereof in the offering of the Bonds will be authorized, ratified and approved by the City Council, and the Purchasers will be furnished, upon request, at the time of payment for and the delivery of the Bonds, a certified copy of such approval, duly executed by the proper officials of the Issuer.

The Ordinance will also approve the form and content of this Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto issued on behalf of the Issuer, and authorize its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Purchasers.

This Official Statement will be approved by the City Council of the Issuer for distribution in accordance with the provisions of the Rule.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS

ATTEST:

/s/ \_\_\_\_\_  
Mayor  
City of Schertz, Texas

/s/ \_\_\_\_\_  
City Secretary  
City of Schertz, Texas

(this page intentionally left blank)

**SCHEDULE I**  
**SCHEDULE OF REFUNDED OBLIGATIONS**

(this page intentionally left blank)



**SCHEDULE I**

**Schedule of Refunded Obligations\***

City of Schertz, Texas Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Certificates of Obligation, Series 2007

<b>Maturity Date (8/1)</b>	<b>Principal</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Redemption Date</b>
2020	\$ 370,000	4.01%	11/28/2018
2021	385,000	4.01%	11/28/2018
2022	400,000	4.01%	11/28/2018
2023	420,000	4.01%	11/28/2018
2024	435,000	4.01%	11/28/2018
2025	455,000	4.01%	11/28/2018
2026	470,000	4.01%	11/28/2018
	<u>\$ 2,935,000</u>		

City of Schertz, Texas General Obligation and Refunding Bonds, Series 2009

<b>Maturity Date (2/1)</b>	<b>Principal</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Redemption Date</b>
2020	\$ 250,000	3.75%	2/1/2019
2021	190,000	4.05%	2/1/2019
2022	160,000	4.05%	2/1/2019
2023	175,000	4.25%	2/1/2019
2024	215,000	4.25%	2/1/2019
2025	200,000	4.50%	2/1/2019
2026	210,000	4.50%	2/1/2019
2027	220,000	4.50%	2/1/2019
2028	530,000	4.50%	2/1/2019
2029	455,000	5.50%	2/1/2019
2030	480,000	5.50%	2/1/2019
2031	510,000	5.50%	2/1/2019
2032	540,000	5.50%	2/1/2019
2033	570,000	5.50%	2/1/2019
	<u>\$ 4,705,000</u>		

City of Schertz, Texas General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2010

<b>Maturity Date (2/1)</b>	<b>Principal</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Redemption Date</b>
2020	\$ 310,000	4.00%	11/28/2018
2021	320,000	4.00%	11/28/2018

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

(this page intentionally left blank)

**APPENDIX A**

**FINANCIAL INFORMATION  
CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS**

(this page intentionally left blank)

**FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE ISSUER**

**ASSESSED VALUATION**

**TABLE 1**

2018 Preliminary Market Value of Taxable Property (100% of Market Value).....	\$ 4,776,686,736
Less Exemptions:	
Optional Over-65 or Disabled.....	\$ 25,940,251
Veterans' Exemptions.....	307,778,629
Freeport Exemptions.....	210,795,070
Open-Space Land and Timberland.....	149,042,269
Prorations/Partial Required Exemptions.....	902,273
Pollution Control.....	655,122
Tax Abatement Act.....	2,337,294
Solar/Wind Exemption.....	612,722
Loss to 10% HO Cap.....	20,159,719
<b>TOTAL EXEMPTIONS</b> .....	<u>718,223,349</u>
2018 Assessed Value of Taxable Property <sup>(1)</sup> .....	<u>\$ 4,058,463,387</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Includes a Freeze Taxable Value of \$433,876,376.

Source: Bexar, Comal and Guadalupe County Appraisal Districts.

**GENERAL OBLIGATION BONDED DEBT**

(as of September 1, 2018)

**General Obligation Debt (Principal Outstanding)**

Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2007	\$ 355,000 *
General Obligation Bonds, Series 2007	3,205,000
General Obligation and Refunding Bonds, Series 2009	210,000 *
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2010	300,000 *
General Obligation Bonds, Series 2011	6,830,000
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2011	705,000
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2011A	3,450,000
General Obligation Bonds, Series 2012	5,785,000
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2013	1,420,000
Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2013	3,490,000
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2014	8,100,000
Tax Notes, Series 2015	875,000
Tax Notes, Series 2015A	605,000
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2015	3,165,000
Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2016A	2,040,000
Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2016B	1,365,000
General Obligation Bonds, Series 2016	5,270,000
General Obligation Bonds, Series 2017	3,800,000
Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2017	5,130,000
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2018	6,035,000
Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Refunding Bonds, Series 2018	10,440,000
The Bonds	<u>9,115,000 *</u>
Total Gross General Obligation Debt	<u>\$ 81,690,000 *</u>

**Less: Self Supporting Debt**

Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2007 (100.00% Water & Sewer)	\$ 355,000 *
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2011 (100.00% Water & Sewer)	705,000
Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2013 (100.00% Water & Sewer)	3,490,000
General Obligation Refunding Bonds, Series 2013 (100.00% Water and Sewer)	1,420,000
Tax Notes, Series 2015 (8.44% Water and Sewer, 37.66% Drainage, 42.21% EMS)	765,000
Combination Tax and Limited Pledge Revenue Certificates of Obligation, Series 2018 (53.49% Water & Sewer)	5,595,000
The Bonds (32.18% Water and Sewer)	<u>3,015,000 *</u>
Total Self-Supporting Debt	<u>\$ 15,345,000 *</u>
Total Net General Obligation Debt Outstanding	<u>\$ 66,345,000 *</u>

2018 Certified Net Assessed Valuation	\$ 4,058,463,387
Ratio of Gross General Obligation Debt Principal to Preliminary Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	2.01%
Ratio of Net General Obligation Debt to Preliminary Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	1.63%

Population: 1990 - 10,555; 2000 - 18,695; 2010 - 31,465; est. 2018 - 40,092  
Per Capita Preliminary Net Taxable Assessed Valuation - \$101,228.76  
Per Capita Gross General Obligation Debt Principal - \$2,037.56  
Per Capita Net General Obligation Debt Principal - \$1,654.82

\* Preliminary, subject to change. Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Obligations.

**CITY OBLIGATIONS - CAPITAL LEASES AND NOTES PAYABLE**

**TABLE 2**

(As of September 30, 2017)

**Operating Leases**

The City has agreements with several telecommunication companies to place cellular towers on City water towers. The following schedule represents the future minimum lease payments to be received by the City.

<u>FYE</u>	<u>Total</u>
2017	229,096
2018	238,260
2019	250,173
2020	262,681
2021	275,816
2022-2026	1,590,260
2027-2031	757,721
	<u>\$ 3,604,007</u>

**Capital Lease**

In 2014, the City entered into two lease agreements qualifying as capital leases for accounting purposes based on a bargain purchase option. Therefore, capital assets and a related capital lease obligation has been recorded at the present value of the future minimum lease payments at the inception date. The assets acquired through capital lease are reported in capital assets with the following accumulated depreciation at September 30, 2017.

<u>Assets:</u>	<u>Governmental Activities</u>	<u>Business-Type Activities</u>
Equipment	\$ 133,715	\$ 347,705
Less: Accumulated Depreciation	<u>(40,115)</u>	<u>(250,218)</u>
Total	<u>\$ 93,600</u>	<u>\$ 97,487</u>

Future minimum lease payments are as follows:

<u>Year Ending September 30,</u>	<u>Governmental Activities</u>	<u>Business Activities <sup>(1)</sup></u>
2018	\$ 25,505	\$ 70,041
2019	<u>-</u>	<u>23,347</u>
Total Payments	\$ 25,505	\$ 93,388
Less: Amount Representing Interest	<u>(358)</u>	<u>(667)</u>
Payments	\$ 25,147	\$ 92,721

Source: The Issuer's Annual Financial Report for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2017.

**GENERAL OBLIGATION DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS**

Fiscal Year Ending Sept. 30	Current Total Outstanding Debt <sup>(a)</sup>	Less: Refunded Obligations Debt Service*	The Bonds*			Combined Debt Service <sup>(a)</sup>	Less: Self- Supporting Debt*	Total Net Debt Service*
			Principal	Interest	Total			
2018	\$ 8,717,714					\$ 8,717,714	\$ 2,144,065	\$ 6,573,649
2019	8,969,125	\$ 375,744	\$ 165,000	\$ 232,663	\$ 397,663	8,991,044	2,320,972	6,787,268
2020	8,940,899	1,294,856	1,005,000	274,544	1,279,544	8,925,586	2,656,483	6,744,535
2021	8,692,000	1,223,884	965,000	242,531	1,207,531	8,675,647	2,491,265	6,657,138
2022	7,731,501	859,958	625,000	216,694	841,694	7,713,237	1,824,146	6,363,767
2023	7,462,219	871,959	655,000	195,894	850,894	7,441,153	1,824,023	6,093,237
2024	7,317,398	901,830	715,000	173,631	888,631	7,304,199	1,826,419	5,954,830
2025	6,483,076	880,318	715,000	150,394	865,394	6,468,152	1,821,522	5,124,136
2026	6,147,016	877,847	730,000	126,913	856,913	6,126,081	1,597,391	5,001,247
2027	5,654,749	389,325	275,000	110,581	385,581	5,651,006	636,475	5,014,531
2028	5,522,159	682,450	585,000	96,606	681,606	5,521,315	635,600	4,885,715
2029	4,747,016	583,013	500,000	78,975	578,975	4,742,978	638,675	4,104,303
2030	4,751,950	582,300	515,000	62,481	577,481	4,747,131	632,325	4,114,806
2031	4,856,594	585,075	535,000	45,419	580,419	4,851,938	633,275	4,218,663
2032	3,705,223	586,200	555,000	27,706	582,706	3,701,729	635,025	3,066,704
2033	3,193,863	585,675	575,000	9,344	584,344	3,192,531	630,969	2,561,563
2034	2,364,644	-	-	-	-	2,364,644	395,688	1,968,956
2035	2,376,600	-	-	-	-	2,376,600	399,394	1,977,206
2036	2,374,944	-	-	-	-	2,374,944	397,466	1,977,478
2037	1,228,469	-	-	-	-	1,228,469	394,978	833,491
2038	691,900	-	-	-	-	691,900	396,825	295,075
Total	<u>\$ 111,929,055</u>	<u>\$ 11,280,433</u>	<u>\$ 9,115,000</u>	<u>\$ 2,044,375</u>	<u>\$ 11,159,375</u>	<u>\$ 111,807,998</u>	<u>\$ 24,932,978</u>	<u>\$ 90,318,296</u>

<sup>(a)</sup> Includes self-supporting debt.

\* Preliminary, subject to change. Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Obligations. Interest calculated at an assumed rate for illustrative purposes only.

**TAX ADEQUACY (Includes Self-Supporting Debt)**

2018 Freeze Adjusted Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	\$	3,624,587,011
Maximum Annual Debt Service Requirements (Fiscal Year Ending 9-30-2019)		8,991,044 *
Indicated required I&S Fund Tax Rate at 98% Collections to produce Maximum Debt Service requirements	\$	0.2531 *

\* Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Obligations.

Note: Above computations are exclusive of investment earnings, delinquent tax collections and penalties and interest on delinquent tax collections.

**TAX ADEQUACY (Excludes Self-Supporting Debt)**

2018 Freeze Adjusted Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	\$	3,624,587,011
Maximum Annual Debt Service Requirements (Fiscal Year Ending 9-30-2019)		6,787,268 *
Indicated required I&S Fund Tax Rate at 98% Collections to produce Maximum Debt Service requirements	\$	0.19108 *

\* Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Obligations.

Note: Above computations are exclusive of investment earnings, delinquent tax collections and penalties and interest on delinquent tax collections.

**INTEREST AND SINKING FUND MANAGEMENT INDEX**

Audited Interest and Sinking Fund Balance, Fiscal Year Ended September 30, 2017	\$	1,450,082
2017 Interest and Sinking Fund Tax Levy at 98% Collections Produce		6,211,961
Plus: Other City Funds		2,144,065
Total Available for General Obligation Debt	\$	9,806,108
Less: General Obligation Debt Service Requirements, Fiscal Year Ending 9/30/17 <sup>(1)</sup>		8,717,714
Estimated Surplus at Fiscal Year Ending 9/30/18 <sup>(2)</sup>	\$	1,088,394

<sup>(1)</sup> Includes self-supporting general obligation debt.

<sup>(2)</sup> Does not include delinquent tax collections, penalties and interest on delinquent tax collections or investment earnings.

**GENERAL OBLIGATION PRINCIPAL REPAYMENT SCHEDULE**

(as of September 1, 2018)

Fiscal Year Ending 9-30	Principal Repayment Schedule				Principal Unpaid at End of Year*	Percent of Principal Retired (%)*
	Currently Outstanding <sup>(a)</sup>	Less: Refunded Obligations*	The Bonds*	Total*		
2018	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 81,690,000	0.00%
2019	6,225,000	-	165,000	6,390,000	75,300,000	7.82%
2020	6,420,000	930,000	1,005,000	6,495,000	68,805,000	15.77%
2021	6,375,000	895,000	965,000	6,445,000	62,360,000	23.66%
2022	5,615,000	560,000	625,000	5,680,000	56,680,000	30.62%
2023	5,530,000	595,000	655,000	5,590,000	51,090,000	37.46%
2024	5,570,000	650,000	715,000	5,635,000	45,455,000	44.36%
2025	4,915,000	655,000	715,000	4,975,000	40,480,000	50.45%
2026	4,750,000	680,000	730,000	4,800,000	35,680,000	56.32%
2027	4,430,000	220,000	275,000	4,485,000	31,195,000	61.81%
2028	4,455,000	530,000	585,000	4,510,000	26,685,000	67.33%
2029	3,835,000	455,000	500,000	3,880,000	22,805,000	72.08%
2030	3,990,000	480,000	515,000	4,025,000	18,780,000	77.01%
2031	4,245,000	510,000	535,000	4,270,000	14,510,000	82.24%
2032	3,230,000	540,000	555,000	3,245,000	11,265,000	86.21%
2033	2,835,000	570,000	575,000	2,840,000	8,425,000	89.69%
2034	2,100,000	-	-	2,100,000	6,325,000	92.26%
2035	2,190,000	-	-	2,190,000	4,135,000	94.94%
2036	2,270,000	-	-	2,270,000	1,865,000	97.72%
2037	1,185,000	-	-	1,185,000	680,000	99.17%
2038	680,000	-	-	680,000	-	100.00%
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 80,845,000</b>	<b>\$ 8,270,000</b>	<b>\$ 9,115,000</b>	<b>\$ 81,690,000</b>		

<sup>(a)</sup> Includes self-supporting debt.

\* Preliminary, subject to change.

**TAXABLE ASSESSED VALUATION FOR TAX YEARS 2009-2018**

**TABLE 3**

Year	Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	Change From Preceding Year	
		Amount (\$)	Percent
2009-10	2,317,194,810	---	---
2010-11	2,362,900,159	45,705,349	1.97%
2011-12	2,390,893,877	27,993,718	1.18%
2012-13	2,589,622,413	198,728,536	8.31%
2013-14	2,769,188,746	179,566,333	6.93%
2014-15	3,068,012,356	298,823,610	10.79%
2015-16	3,400,613,988	332,601,632	10.84%
2016-17	3,683,394,908	282,780,920	8.32%
2017-18	3,813,920,281	130,525,373	3.54%
2018-19	4,058,463,387	244,543,106	6.41%

Source: Bexar, Comal and Guadalupe County Appraisal Districts.

**PRINCIPAL TAXPAYERS 2017-2018**

**TABLE 4**

Name	Type of Business/Property	% of Total 2017	
		2017 Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	Assessed Valuation
Amazon.com.KYDC LLC	Retail	\$ 80,987,236	2.12%
US Real Estate LP	Real Estate	57,155,244	1.50%
SC Schertz LLC	Commercial	24,351,699	0.64%
H E Butt Grocery Co.	Grocery	23,430,800	0.61%
Dallas MTA LP	Real Estate	20,524,572	0.54%
EM Limited Partnership	Financial Investment	16,875,100	0.44%
Wal-Mart Real Estate Business Trust	Retail	13,221,374	0.35%
Schertz Holdings LTD	Investment Mangement	12,490,000	0.33%
Capital Group Companies Inc.	Investment Mangement	11,451,026	0.30%
Guadalupe Valley Electric CO OP	Utility	10,942,700	0.29%
		<u>\$ 271,429,751</u>	<u>7.12%</u>

Source: Bexar, Comal and Guadalupe County Appraisal Districts.



**CLASSIFICATION OF ASSESSED VALUATION**

**TABLE 5**

	2018	% of Total	2017	% of Total	2016	% of Total
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 2,729,341,754	57.14%	\$ 2,506,858,481	56.24%	\$ 2,321,477,459	52.08%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	68,879,326	1.44%	62,165,120	1.39%	61,211,562	1.37%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	55,197,112	1.16%	53,822,108	1.21%	54,708,417	1.23%
Real, Acreage (Land Only)	151,267,564	3.17%	146,765,602	3.29%	132,588,591	2.97%
Real, Farm and Ranch Improvements	50,527,759	1.06%	45,931,621	1.03%	39,046,067	0.88%
Real, Commercial and Industrial	797,609,478	16.70%	751,226,159	16.85%	707,932,328	15.88%
Real & Tangible, Personal Utilities	18,060,090	0.38%	19,711,046	0.44%	18,293,268	0.41%
Tangible Personal, Commercial & Industrial	840,111,351	17.59%	818,875,523	18.37%	839,527,229	18.83%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes	12,208,540	0.26%	12,246,697	0.27%	11,589,223	0.26%
Residential Inventory	49,904,362	1.04%	37,079,181	0.83%	36,633,189	0.82%
Real Property, Inventory	3,579,400	0.07%	2,681,370	0.06%	3,520,047	0.08%
<b>Total Appraised Value</b>	<b>\$ 4,776,686,736</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 4,457,362,908</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 4,226,527,380</b>	<b>94.82%</b>
<b>Less:</b>						
Optional Over-65 or Disabled	\$ 25,940,251		\$ 24,640,004		\$ 24,055,612	
Veterans' Exemptions	307,778,629		257,067,999		198,531,263	
Freeport Exemptions	210,795,070		199,674,287		171,613,784	
Open-Space Land and Timberland	149,042,269		144,926,194		130,898,648	
Prorations/Partial Required Exemptions	902,273		883,881		-	
Pollution Control	655,122		527,190		456,315	
Tax Abatement Act	2,337,294		300,000		978,670	
Solar/Wind Exemption	612,722		404,051		414,400	
Loss to 10% HO Cap	20,159,719		15,019,021		16,183,780	
<b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>	<b>\$ 4,058,463,387</b>		<b>\$ 3,813,920,281</b>		<b>\$ 3,683,394,908</b>	
<b>Freeze Taxable</b>	<b>433,876,376</b>		<b>351,325,525</b>		<b>355,329,028</b>	
<b>Freeze Adjusted Taxable</b>	<b>\$ 3,624,587,011</b>		<b>\$ 3,462,594,756</b>		<b>\$ 3,328,065,880</b>	

Source: Bexar, Comal and Guadalupe County Appraisal Districts.

**TAX DATA**

**TABLE 6**

Tax Year	Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	Tax Rate	Tax Levy	% of Collections		Year Ended
				Current	Total	
2009	\$ 2,317,194,810	\$ 0.434200	\$ 10,061,260	99.17	100.16	9/30/2010
2010	2,362,900,159	0.449300	10,616,510	96.01	96.46	9/30/2011
2011	2,390,893,877	0.484300	11,579,099	96.64	97.39	9/30/2012
2012	2,589,622,413	0.499900	12,945,522	96.70	97.08	9/30/2013
2013	2,769,188,746	0.497400	13,773,945	96.43	99.35	9/30/2014
2014	3,068,012,356	0.499900	15,336,994	96.08	99.61	9/30/2015
2015	3,400,613,988	0.491100	16,700,415	96.92	99.92	9/30/2016
2016	3,683,394,908	0.491100	18,089,152	99.01	101.00	9/30/2017
2017	3,813,920,281	0.491000	18,726,349	95.88	97.39	9/30/2018
2018	4,058,463,387	0.514600	20,884,853	(In process of collection)		9/30/2019

**TAX RATE DISTRIBUTION**

**TABLE 7**

	2018	2017	2016	2015	2014
General Fund	\$ 0.349700	\$ 0.324800	\$ 0.316800	\$ 0.315900	\$ 0.299300
I & S Fund	0.164900	0.166200	0.174300	0.175200	0.200600
<b>Total Tax Rate</b>	<b>\$ 0.514600</b>	<b>\$ 0.491000</b>	<b>\$ 0.491100</b>	<b>\$ 0.491100</b>	<b>\$ 0.499900</b>

Source: Bexar, Comal and Guadalupe County Appraisal Districts.

The Issuer has adopted the provisions of Chapter 321, as amended, Texas Tax Code, which authorizes the City to levy a 1% sales and use tax and use the revenues from such tax for general municipal purposes. In addition, some issuers are subject to a property tax relief and/or an economic and industrial development tax. At an election held on August 9, 1997, an additional ½ cent sales tax was authorized by the voters for economic development. The City began collecting this increase on January 1, 1998. Revenues received from the ½ cent sales tax for economic development are transferred to the Schertz Economic Development Corporation (a nonprofit economic development corporation created by the City) to be used to promote economic development in the City and are not available to be used for general municipal purposes. Net collections on calendar year basis are as follows:

Calendar Year	Total Collected	% of Ad Valorem Tax Levy <sup>(1)</sup>	Equivalent of Ad Valorem Tax Rate
2008	\$ 6,264,333	46.11%	#REF!
2009	5,884,043	38.99%	0.39
2010	6,297,600	39.08%	0.38
2011	7,002,410	40.32%	0.34
2012	8,130,275	41.94%	0.32
2013	9,716,196	47.03%	0.29
2014	10,445,078	45.40%	0.29
2015	10,303,430	41.13%	0.33
2016	10,992,746	40.51%	0.34
2017	10,849,278	38.62%	0.35
2018	8,484,731	(as of September 2018)	

<sup>(1)</sup> Calculated to reflect only the sales tax revenues collected by the City from its 1.00% sales tax.

Source: State Comptroller's Office of the State of Texas.

**OVERLAPPING DEBT INFORMATION**

(as of September 1, 2018)

The following table indicates the indebtedness, defined as outstanding bonds payable from ad valorem taxes, of governmental entities overlapping the City and the estimated percentages and amounts of such indebtedness attributable to property within the City. Expenditures of the various taxing bodies overlapping the territory of the Issuer are paid out of ad valorem taxes levied by these taxing bodies on properties overlapping the Issuer. These political taxing bodies are independent of the Issuer and may incur borrowings to finance their expenditures. The following statements of direct and estimated overlapping ad valorem tax bonds was developed from information contained in the "Texas Municipal Reports" published by the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. Except for the amounts relating to the Issuer, the Issuer has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information, and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete. Furthermore, certain of the entities listed below may have authorized or issued additional bonds since the date stated below, and such entities may have programs requiring the authorization and/or issuance of substantial amounts of additional bonds, the amount of which cannot be determined.

Taxing Body	Gross Debt (As of 9/1/18)	% Overlapping	Amount Overlapping
Alamo Community College District	\$ 479,445,000	0.26%	\$ 1,246,557
Bexar County	1,700,305,000	0.26%	4,420,793
Bexar County Hospital District	891,565,000	0.26%	2,318,069
Comal County	146,690,000	5.02%	7,363,838
Comal ISD	767,165,107	7.02%	53,854,991
Guadalupe County	13,655,000	20.63%	2,817,027
Schertz-Cibolo-Universal City ISD	417,456,092	49.49%	206,599,020
Total Gross Overlapping Debt			<u>\$ 278,620,294</u>
Schertz, City of			\$ 81,690,000 *
Total Gross Direct and Overlapping Debt			<u>\$ 360,310,294 *</u>
Ratio of Gross Direct Debt and Overlapping Debt			8.88% *
Per Capita Gross Direct Debt and Overlapping Debt			\$8,987.09 *

Note: The above figures show Gross General Obligation Debt for the City of Schertz, Texas. The Issuer's Net General Obligation Debt is \$66,345,000\*. Calculations on the basis of Net General Obligation Debt would change the above figures as follows:

Total Net Direct and Overlapping Debt	\$ 344,965,294
Ratio of Net Direct and Overlapping Debt to 2018 Net Assessed Valuation	8.50%
Per Capita Net Direct and Overlapping Debt	\$8,604.34

Source: Texas Municipal Reports published by the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas

\* Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Obligations. Preliminary, subject to change.

**ASSESSED VALUATION AND TAX RATE OF OVERLAPPING ISSUERS**

Governmental Subdivision	2017 Assessed Valuation	% of Actual	2017 Tax Rate
Alamo Community College District	\$ 154,494,708,444	100%	\$ 0.149000
Bexar County	150,933,852,946	100%	0.304000
Bexar County Hospital District	156,342,553,586	100%	0.276000
Comal County	16,111,118,698	100%	0.308000
Comal ISD	13,264,610,468	100%	1.390000
Guadalupe County	10,846,229,588	100%	0.327000
Schertz-Cibolo-Universal City ISD	4,944,500,628	100%	1.490000

Source: Texas Municipal Reports published by the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

**AUTHORIZED BUT UNISSUED GENERAL OBLIGATION BONDS**

Issuer	Date of Authorization	Purpose	Amount Authorized	Issued To-Date	Unissued
Alamo Community College District	5/6/2017	College Facility	\$ 450,000,000	\$ 173,000,000	\$ 277,000,000
Bexar County	None				
Bexar County Hospital District	None				
Comal County	None				
Comal ISD	None				
Guadalupe County	None				
San Antonio River Authority	None				
Schertz-Cibolo-Universal City ISD	None				
Schertz, City of	11/03/2015	Streets and Bridges	\$ 7,000,000	\$ 2,600,000	\$ 4,400,000 <sup>(1)</sup>

Source: Texas Municipal Reports published by the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

<sup>(1)</sup> Includes \$600,000 of authorization to be issued through the City's General Obligation and Refunding Bonds, Series 2018.

**GENERAL FUND COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF REVENUES AND EXPENDITURES**

**TABLE 9**

The following statements set forth in condensed form reflect the historical operations of the Issuer. Such summary has been prepared for inclusion herein based upon information obtained from the Issuer's audited financial statements and records. Reference is made to such statements for further and complete information.

	Fiscal Year Ended				
	9/30/2017	9/30/2016	9/30/2015	9/30/2014	9/30/2013
Fund Balance - Beginning of Year	\$ 11,428,778	\$ 9,616,487	\$ 7,722,034	\$ 6,017,206	\$ 3,976,817
<b>Revenues</b>					
Taxes	\$ 19,450,338	\$ 18,850,031	\$ 17,926,685	\$ 16,652,245	\$ 15,411,501
Licenses and Permits	2,367,929	1,234,048	1,447,814	1,365,624	1,398,781
Charges for Services	2,107,844	1,610,940	1,609,917	1,592,851	3,205,265
Fines and Forfeitures	1,021,965	1,343,236	1,498,887	1,712,562	1,870,825
Intergovernmental	307,809	293,727	233,959	218,081	464,979
Investment Earnings	128,158	58,724	24,369	13,657	10,244
Grants	603,477	599,791	-	-	584,214
Other Sources	-	-	571,416	547,515	-
<b>Total Revenues</b>	<b>\$ 25,987,520</b>	<b>\$ 23,990,497</b>	<b>\$ 23,313,047</b>	<b>\$ 22,102,535</b>	<b>\$ 22,945,809</b>
<b>Expenditures</b>					
General Government	\$ 5,171,635	\$ 5,187,489	\$ 5,187,335	\$ 5,232,687	\$ 5,552,150
Public Safety	11,846,184	11,010,802	10,037,830	9,398,845	9,113,840
Streets and Parks	1,128,979	1,007,326	952,663	1,012,607	951,528
Health	1,682,955	1,173,070	404,008	394,918	1,120,724
Recreation	901,992	843,643	1,182,906	1,100,971	830,149
Cultural	672,934	480,175	795,436	794,434	341,961
Capital Outlay	2,395,926	1,692,977	637,800	383,264	2,597,128
Administration	644,773	498,251	1,638,429	1,604,825	221,562
Bond Issue Costs	33,174	-	-	-	-
Principal	36,513	33,175	31,875	32,764	37,792
Interest and Fiscal Charges	-	38,214	8,341	579	913
<b>Total Expenses</b>	<b>\$ 24,515,065</b>	<b>\$ 21,965,122</b>	<b>\$ 20,876,623</b>	<b>\$ 19,955,894</b>	<b>\$ 20,767,747</b>
Excess (Deficit) of Revenues Over Expenditures	\$ 1,472,455	\$ 2,025,375	\$ 2,436,424	\$ 2,146,641	\$ 2,178,062
<b>Other Financing Sources (Uses):</b>					
Issuance of Bonds	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Capital Lease	-	-	-	133,715	-
Operating Transfers In	68,385	3,019	-	89,416	61,226
Operating Transfers Out	-	(216,103)	(541,971)	(664,944)	(198,899)
<b>Total Other Financing Sources (Uses):</b>	<b>\$ 68,385</b>	<b>\$ (213,084)</b>	<b>\$ (541,971)</b>	<b>\$ (441,813)</b>	<b>\$ (137,673)</b>
Prior Year End Adjustment	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Fund Balance - End of Year</b>	<b>\$ 12,969,618</b>	<b>\$ 11,428,778</b>	<b>\$ 9,616,487</b>	<b>\$ 7,722,034</b>	<b>\$ 6,017,206</b>

Source: The Issuer's Comprehensive Annual Financial Reports and information provided by the Issuer.

The City anticipates ending the fiscal year ending September 30, 2018 with an unaudited General Fund balance of \$12,100,665. The City has implemented a policy to restrict the General Fund balance to no more than 26% of operating expenditures. The City will draw down its General Fund balance over subsequent years to meet that target.

The City participates as one of 872 plans in the nontraditional, joint contributory, hybrid defined benefit pension plan administered by the Texas Municipal Retirement System (TMRS). TMRS is an agency created by the State of Texas and administered in accordance with the TMRS Act, Subtitle G, Title 8, Texas Government Code (the TMRS Act) as an agency multiple-employer retirement system for municipal employees in the State of Texas. The TMRS Act places the general administration and management of the System with a six-member Board of Trustees. Although the Governor, with the advice and consent of the Senate, appoints the Board, TMRS is not fiscally dependent on the State of Texas. TMRS's defined benefit pension plan is a tax-qualified plan under Sections 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. TMRS issues a publicly available comprehensive annual financial report (CAFR) that can be obtained at [www.tmrs.org](http://www.tmrs.org).

All eligible employees of the City are required to participate in TMRS retirement system.

Benefits Provided

TMRS provides retirement, disability, and death benefits. Benefit provisions are adopted by the governing body of the City, within the options available in the state statutes governing TMRS.

At retirement, the benefit is calculated as if the sum of the employee's contributions, with interest, and the City-financed monetary credits with interest were used to purchase an annuity. Members may choose to receive their retirement benefit in over of seven payment options. Members may also choose to receive a portion of their benefit as a Partial Lump Sum Distribution in an amount equal to 12, 24, or 36 monthly payments, which cannot exceed 75% of the member's deposits and interest.

At the December 31, 2016 valuation and measurement date, the following employees were covered by the benefit

	2015	2016
Inactive employees or beneficiaries currently receiving benefits	79	84
Inactive employees entitles to but not yet receiving benefits	138	155
Active employees	312	317
	<u>529</u>	<u>556</u>

Contributions

The contribution rates for employees in TMRS are either 5%, 6%, or 7% of employee gross earnings, and the City matching percentages are with 100%, 150%, or 200%, both as adopted by the governing body of the city. Under the state law governing TMRS, the contributions rate for each city is determined annually by the actuary, using the Entry Age Normal (EAN) actuarial cost method. The actuarially determined rate is the estimated amount necessary to finance the cost of benefits earned by employees during the year, with an additional amount to finance any unfunded accrued liability.

Employees for the City were required to contribute 7% of their annual gross earnings during the fiscal year. The contribution rates for the City were 15.94% and 158.87% in calendar years 2016 and 2017, respectively. The City's contributions to TMRS for the year ended September 30, 2017 were \$2,756,511.

Net Pension Liability

The city's Net Pension Liability (NPL) was measured as of December 31, 2016, and the Total Pension Liability (TPL) used to calculate the Net Pension Liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date.

Actuarial assumptions:

The Total Pension Liability in the December 31, 2016 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Inflation	2.5% per year
Overall payroll growth	3.0% per year
Investment Rate of Return*	6.75%

\*Presented net of pension plan investment expense, including inflation.

## **EMPLOYEE'S PENSION PLAN AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS - CONT'D**

Salary increases were based on a service-related table. Mortality rates for active members, retirees, and beneficiaries were based on the gender-distinct RP2000 Combined Healthy Mortality Table, with male rates multiplied by 109% and female rates multiplied by 103%. The rates are projected on a fully generational basis by scale BB to account for future mortality improvements. For disabled annuitants, the gender-distinct RP2000 Disabled Retiree Mortality Table with Blue Collar adjustment are used with male rates multiplied by 109% and female rates multiplied by 103% with a 3-year se-forward for both males and female. In addition, a 3% minimum mortality rate is applied to reflect the impairment for younger members who become disabled. The rates are projected on a fully generational basis by scale BB to account for future mortality improvements subject to the 3% floor.

Actuarial assumptions used in the December 31, 2016 valuation were based on the results of actuarial experience studies. The experience study in TMRS was for the period December 31, 2010 through December 31, 2014. Healthy post-retirement mortality rates and annuity purchase rates were updated based on a Mortality Experience Investigation Study covering the 2009 through 2011, and the dated December 31, 2013. These assumptions were first used in the December 31, 2013 valuation, along with a change to the Entry Age Normal (EAN) actuarial cost method. Assumptions are reviewed annually. No additional changes were made for the 2014 valuation. After the Asset Allocation Study analysis and experience investigation study, the Board amended the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments from 7% to 6.75%. Plan assets are managed on a total return basis with an emphasis on both capital appreciation as well as the production of income, in order to satisfy the short-term and long-term funding needs of TMRS.

The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building-block method in which best estimate ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expenses and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation. In determining their best estimate of a recommended investment return assumption under the various alternative asset allocation portfolio, GRS focused on the area between (1) arithmetic mean (aggressive). At its meeting on July 30, 2015, the TMRS Board approved a new portfolio target allocation. The target allocation and best estimate of arithmetic real rates of return for each major asset summarized in the following table:

<u>Asset Class</u>	<u>Target Allocation</u>	<u>Long-Term Expected Real Rate of Return (Arithmetic)</u>
Domestic Equity	17.50%	4.55%
International Equity	17.50%	6.35%
Core Fixed Income	20.00%	1.00%
Non-Core Fixed Income	10.00%	4.15%
Real Return	10.00%	4.15%
Real Estate	10.00%	4.75%
Absolute Return	10.00%	4.00%
Private Equity	5.00%	7.75%
Total	<u>100.00%</u>	

### Discount Rate

The discount rate used to measure the Total Pension Liability was 6.75%. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that employee and employer contributions will be made at the rates specified in statute. Based on that assumption, the pension plan's Fiduciary Net Position was projected to be available to make all projected future benefit payments of current active and inactive employees. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all period of projected benefit payments to determine the Total Pension Liability.

**EMPLOYEE'S PENSION PLAN AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS - CONT'D**Changes in the Net Pension Liability

	Total Pension Liability	Plan Fiduciary Net Position	Net Pension Liability
Balance at December 31, 2015	\$ 55,119,232	\$ 38,499,857	\$ 16,619,375
Changes for the year:			
Service Cost	2,855,745	-	2,855,745
Interest	3,763,562	-	3,763,562
Change of Benefit Terms	-	-	-
Difference Between Expected and Actual Experience	139,216	-	139,216
Changes of Assumptions	-	-	-
Contributions - Employer	-	2,627,335	(2,627,335)
Contributions - Employee	-	1,152,864	(1,152,864)
Net Investment Income	-	2,602,572	(2,602,572)
Benefit Payments, Including Refunds of Employee Contributions	(1,581,272)	(1,581,272)	-
Administrative Expense	-	(29,385)	29,385
Other Changes	-	(1,583)	1,583
Net Changes	5,177,251	4,770,531	406,720
Balance at December 31, 2016	\$ 60,296,483	\$ 43,270,388	\$ 17,026,095

The following presents the net pension liability of the City, calculated using the discount rate of 6.75%, as well as what the City's net pension liability would be if it were calculated using a discount rate that is 1-percentage point lower (5.75%) or 1-percentage point higher (7.75%) than the current rate:

	Discount Rate 5.75%	Discount Rate 6.75%	Discount Rate 7.75%
Net Pension Liability	\$ 27,443,427	\$ 17,026,095	\$ 8,668,647

Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position

Detailed information about the pension plan's Fiduciary Net Position is available in a separately-issued TMRS financial report. That report may be obtained on the Internet at [www.tmr.com](http://www.tmr.com).

Pension Expense and Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions

For the year ended September 30, 2017, the City recognized pension expense of \$3,512,360. Also as of September 30, 2017, the City reported deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between Expected and Actual Economic Experience	\$ 132,647	\$ -
Changes in Actuarial Assumptions	39,689	-
Differences Between Projected and Actual Investment Earnings	1,658,421	-
Contributions Subsequent to the Measurement Date	1,980,718	-
	\$ 3,811,475	\$ -

**EMPLOYEE'S PENSION PLAN AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS - CONT'D**

Deferred outflows of resources in the amount of \$1,980,718 is related to pensions resulting from contributions subsequent to the measurement date, and will be recognized as a reduction of the net pension liability for the plan year ending December 31, 2017. The City liquidates their Net Pension Liability through payments from the general fund. Other amounts reported as deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

For the Year ended December 31,	
2017	\$ 613,689
2018	613,689
2019	531,495
2020	45,274
2021	25,004
Thereafter	<u>1,606</u>
	<u>\$ 1,830,757</u>

**Other Postemployment Benefits**

The City also participates in the cost sharing multiple-employer defined benefit group-term life insurance plan operated by TMRS known as Supplemental Death Benefits Fund (SDBF). The City elected, by ordinance, to provide group-term life insurance coverage to both current and retired employees. The City may terminate coverage under and discontinue participation in the SDBF by adopting an ordinance before November 1 of any year to be effective the following January 1.

The death benefit for active employees provides lump-sum payment approximately equal to the employee's annual salary (calculated based on the employee's actual earnings, for the 12-month period preceding the month of death); retired employees are insured for \$7,500; this coverage is an "other postemployment benefit," or OPEB.

The City contributes to the SDBF at a contractually required rate as determined by an annual actuarial valuation. The rate is equal to the cost of providing one-year term life insurance. The funding policy for the SDBF program is to assure that adequate resources are available to meet all death benefit payments for the upcoming year; the intent is not to pre-fund retiree life insurance during the employees' entire careers.

The City's contributions to the TMRS SDBF for the years ended 2017, 2016, and 2015 were \$22,066, \$20,324, and \$21,681, respectively, which equaled the required contributions each year.

**Note 11 - Retiree Health Insurance Plan**

Plan Description

The City provides another post-employment benefit to eligible retirees of the City whereby they can stay on the City's health insurance plan by paying the full premium.

Contributions

The City's annual other post-employment benefits (OPEB) cost is calculated based on the annual required contribution (ARC) of the employer, an amount actuarially determined in accordance with the parameters of GASB Statement No. 45. The ARC represents a level of accrual that, if paid on an ongoing basis, is projected to cover the normal cost each year and to amortize any unfunded actuarial liabilities (or funding excesses) over a period not to exceed thirty years. The City's annual OPEB cost for the fiscal year ending September 30, 2017 is as follows:

Annual Required Contribution	\$ 139,515
Interest on OPEB obligation	17,912
Adjustment to ARC	<u>(21,183)</u>
Annual OPEB cost	136,244
Contributions	<u>(24,107)</u>
Increase in Net OPEB obligation	112,137
Beginning Net OPEB Obligation	<u>543,618</u>
Ending Net OPEB Obligation	<u>\$ 655,755</u>



**EMPLOYEE'S PENSION PLAN AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS - CONT'D**

The City's annual OPEB cost, the amount contributed by the employer, the percentage of annual OPEB cost contributed to the plan, and the net OPEB obligation for fiscal year ending September 30, 2016 and the preceding two fiscal years were as follows:

September 30,	Cost	Contributions	Contributed	Obligation
2017	\$ 136,244	\$ 24,107	17.7%	\$ 655,755
2016	136,557	23,519	17.2%	543,618
2015	81,159	15,485	19.1%	430,580

The Projected Unit Credit Cost Method is used to calculate the actuarial required contribution (ARC) for the City's retiree health care plan. Using the plan benefits, the present health premiums and a set of actuarial assumptions, the anticipated future payments are projected. The actuarial cost method then provides for a systematic funding for these anticipated payments. The yearly ARC is computed to cover the cost of benefits being earned by covered members as well as to amortize a portion of the unfunded accrued liability.

Projections of health benefits are based on the plan as understood of by the City and include the types of benefits in force at the valuation date and the pattern of sharing benefit costs between the City and the City's employees to that point. Actuarial calculations reflect a long-term perspective and employ methods and assumptions that are designed to reduce short-term volatility in actuarial accrued liabilities and the actuarial value of assets. Significant methods and assumptions were as follows:

Inflation Rate	2.5%
Investment Rate of Return	4.0%, net of expenses
Actuarial Cost Method	Projected Unit of Credit
Amortization Method	Level as a percent of payroll
Amortization Period	30-year open period
Payroll Growth	3.0%
Medical Trend	Initial rate of 7.50%, declining to an ultimate rate of 4.25% after 15 years

Actuarial valuations involve estimates of the value of reported amounts and assumptions about the probability of events in the future. Amounts determined regarding the funded status and the annual required contributions of the City's retiree health care plan are subject to continual revision as actual results are compared to past expectations and new estimates are made about the future. The required schedule of funding progress presented as required supplementary information provides multiyear trend information that shows whether the actuarial value of plan assets is increasing or decreasing over time relative to the actuarial accrued liability for benefits.

The funded status as of December 31, 2015, the most recent actuarial valuation date, is as follows:

Actuarial Valuation Date	Actuarial Value of Assets	Actuarial Accrued Liability (AAL)	Funded Ratio	Unfunded AAL (UAAL)	Covered Payroll	UAAL as a Percentage of Covered Payroll
12/31/2015	\$ -	\$ 1,055,757	0.0%	\$ 1,055,757	\$ 14,356,845	7.4%

**WATERWORKS AND SEWER SYSTEM PLANT IN OPERATION****TABLE 11**

(As of September 30, 2017)

Land	\$ 1,354,138
Water Rights	70,245
Buildings and Improvements	4,660,001
Machinery, Equipment and Vehicles	5,013,077
Infrastructure	92,807,350
Construction in Progress	<u>2,907,404</u>
Total	\$ 106,812,215
Less: Accumulated Depreciation	<u>(31,233,417)</u>
Net Waterworks and Sewer System in Service	<u>\$ 75,578,798</u>

**WATERWORKS AND SEWER SYSTEM OPERATING STATEMENT****TABLE 12**

The following condensed statements have been compiled using accounting principles customarily employed in the determination of net revenues available for debt service, and in all instances exclude depreciation, transfers, bad debt, debt service payments and expenditures identified as capital.

	Fiscal Year Ended				
	9/30/2017	9/30/2016	9/30/2015	9/30/2014	9/30/2013
Revenues	\$ 25,831,284	\$ 22,105,622	\$ 21,007,823	\$ 19,680,313	\$ 18,321,198
Expenditures	<u>18,697,162</u>	<u>19,740,518</u>	<u>16,376,259</u>	<u>15,822,737</u>	<u>14,659,528</u>
Schertz/Seguin LGC Payment	<u>2,242,314</u>	<u>2,160,309</u>	<u>1,378,081</u>	<u>1,432,074</u>	<u>1,739,708</u>
Net Revenues Available					
Available for Debt Service	<u>\$ 4,891,808</u>	<u>\$ 204,795</u>	<u>\$ 3,253,483</u>	<u>\$ 2,425,502</u>	<u>\$ 1,921,962</u>
Connections:					
Water	14,124	13,877	13,570	13,324	12,757
Sewer	<u>12,398</u>	<u>12,282</u>	<u>11,413</u>	<u>11,578</u>	<u>11,456</u>

Source: The Issuer's Comprehensive Annual Financial Reports for Fiscal Year Ending September 30, 2017.

**WATER SUPPLY****TABLE 13**

Schertz's primary water source is from the Carrizo Aquifer which is pumped and treated by the Schertz Seguin Local Government Corporation ("SSLGC"); the "Corporation" has water leases totaling 19,363 acre feet and leases 800 acre feet to Unersal City, 1,500 acre feet to the City of Selma, 840 acre feet to Spring Hill, and of the remainder 50% are dedicated to the City of Schertz. Schertz's water system has nine water storage tanks which can hold 15,500,000 gallons. Schertz maintains 225 miles of water lines. Schertz's total water usage for fiscal year September 30, 2017 was 1,582,450,300 gallons.

Schertz's secondary source of water is a lease from the Edwards Aquifer Authority for 1,768 acre-feet (or 576,104,568 gallons) per year. Of this amount, 700 acre feet is leased for additional revenue. The water source is used only during emergency situations or when the Schertz utility system demand is at peak levels. Schertz has two wells which can produce up to 4,180,000 gallons per day from the Edwards Aquifer. Although Schertz still maintains its permits (and ownership) to draw water from the Edwards Aquifer, for fiscal year ending September 30, 2017 the City obtained 99% of its water from the Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation. Schertz leased its excess Edwards Aquifer water to other entities that did not have capacity. The revenue from leases is included in Schertz's Utility System Revenues.

To develop an additional source of water outside of the Edwards Aquifer, the City of Schertz, along with the City of Seguin, created the Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation. The Corporation was charged with financing a new water resource for these cities.

Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation. Pursuant to the regional water supply contract dated November 15, 1999, the Corporation issued Contract Revenue Bonds to finance the development of a well field and collection system and transmission and treatment facilities, including the acquisition of related water rights and rights-of-way (the "Original Project"). The Original Project transports groundwater from the Carrizo Aquifer (the "Aquifer") in southwestern Gonzales County to the Schertz/Live Oak Tank and the Seguin Water Treatment Plant. The Original Project provides the necessary water, coupled with water from the Edwards Aquifer, to address Schertz's needs. The payments by the cities of Schertz and Seguin constitute an operating expense of their respective utility systems. Schertz is obligated to pay 50% of the debt service, operation and maintenance and overhead payments. Water began to flow to Schertz on February 20, 2003.

**APPENDIX B**

**GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS AND  
GUADALUPE, COMAL AND BEXAR COUNTIES, TEXAS**

(this page intentionally left blank)

**GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
BEXAR, COMAL, AND GUADALUPE COUNTIES, TEXAS**

**The City of Schertz**

The City of Schertz, Texas (the "City") is located between the Cities of Austin and San Antonio, Texas, on Interstate 35, and on Interstate 10 between the Cities of San Antonio and Seguin, Texas and in the area between the two Interstates. The corporate limits extend into the Counties of Bexar, Guadalupe, and Comal, Texas. The largest portion of the City is within Guadalupe County, Texas. In addition to the two Interstates, FM 3009, FM 78 and Schertz Parkway provide major thoroughfares into and through the City. Southern Pacific, Missouri Pacific, Missouri Kansas, and Texas Railroad provide rail services into the Schertz and San Antonio areas.

The City was incorporated in December 1958 and is a home rule municipality operating under its own Charter since April, 1974, as amended April 1979, May 1989, May 1997, 2006, and 2008. The Charter provides that the City will operate under the council/manager form of government pursuant to the laws of the State of Texas. The City Manager, appointed by the six-member elected Council, is the chief administrative officer of the City.

The City provides a full range of services including: police, emergency medical services, and fire protection; water and sewer services; waste collection; code enforcement; comprehensive planning; street maintenance and recreational activities as well as economic development efforts. The City has 2 fire stations and 1 training facility with 32 full time employees. The Fire Department covers more than 40 square miles, including unincorporated areas of Bexar, Comal and Guadalupe Counties. The fire Department has 13 vehicles including one 100' aerial platform, two class A engines, one reserve engine, two brush trucks, one hazmat truck, and one rescue trailer. The City also has 7 parks, 20 playgrounds, 12 baseball/softball fields and 2 pavilions (one large – 10,000 square feet; one small – 600 square feet.)

**Economy**

In the last few years, four Fortune 100 companies have made major investments in Schertz. These four companies include General Electric, Caterpillar, Amazon.com and SYSCO. General Electric purchased Salof Companies which designs and manufactures small scale liquefied natural gas technologies and occupies a 390,935 square foot facility in Schertz. Amazon.com completed construction of their \$166 million fulfillment center on 96 acres. The fulfillment center has 1.26 million square feet and is the largest facility in Schertz and in Guadalupe County. SYSCO completed their 630,000 square foot distribution facility in January 2012 and employs 810 full-time staff. This is a regional distribution center for SYSCO.

In 2017, the City completed three major construction projects. These projects were built as speculative projects to help absorb increased demand for industrial space within the San Antonio market.

Baptist Emerus Hospital completed construction on its new \$11 million facility in 2013. Businesses with headquarters or divisions located within the city or in close proximity include Vision Works, Brandt Engineering, Cal-Tex Protective Coatings, Inc., CST Distribution which was formerly Valero, FedEx Freight, Marshall Shredding Company, Kraft Nabisco, Republic National Distributing Company, Caterpillar, Wal-Mart, and H.E.B.

**PRINCIPAL 2017 EMPLOYERS**

Employer	Employees	% of Total City Employment
Schertz/Cibolo/UC ISD	1837	12.92%
Amazon.com	1256	8.83%
Sysco Central Texas	815	5.73%
Baker Hughes, a GE Company	600	4.22%
The Brandt Companies, LLC	437	3.07%
FedEx Ground	475	3.34%
Visionworks	400	2.81%
Republic Beverage Company	382	2.69%
HEB Grocery Co	350	2.46%
City of Schertz	341	2.40%

**Medical**

The Methodist Healthcare has the largest medical facilities in San Antonio and its surrounding areas. With a total of 9 hospitals; 5 main healthcare Hospitals (including one in Boerne), 1 Children's Hospital, 2 Heart Hospitals, 1 Specialty and Transplant Hospital and 3 outpatient clinics. Located in the City of Live Oak on IH-35 and Judson Road, the Northeast Methodist Hospital is the largest medical center for the northeast quadrant of San Antonio. The Northeast Methodist Hospital offers a wide variety of services which includes: 24-hour emergency, surgical, cardiovascular (three cardiac cath labs with electrophysiology capabilities) units, a spacious intensive care unit and inpatient rehabilitation services. An orthopedic service has been implemented – The Joint Replacement Academy – offering the latest treatment options for knee and hip pain. Northeast Methodist Hospital is accredited by the Joint Commission in stroke care and is designated as an accredited Chest Pain Center.

**Education**

Schertz-Cibolo-Universal City Independent School District serves most of the City. Higher education facilities are located within a few minutes driving time and include 15 universities and colleges. Some of the numerous facilities available in nearby San Antonio, Texas include University of Texas at San Antonio, University of Texas Health Science Center, St. Mary's University, Trinity University, Incarnate Word University, Our lady of the Lake University, Texas A&M and Alamo Community Colleges. Texas State University is located nearby in San Marcos, Texas and Texas Lutheran University is located nearby in Seguin, Texas.

## Guadalupe County, Texas

Guadalupe County, Texas (the "County") located in south central Texas, is bounded by Comal, Hays, Caldwell, Gonzales, Wilson, and Bexar counties. The County seat is the City of Seguin, Texas. Guadalupe County was created from Gonzales and Bexar counties and was organized on July 13, 1846. The County takes its name from the Guadalupe River, which Alonso de Leon named in 1689 in honor of the Lady of Guadalupe depicted on his standard.

The County is a component of the "San Antonio Area Metropolitan Statistical Area" (MSA) and covers an area of 715 square miles. The County is traversed by Interstate Highway 35 and Highway 10 (east to west). US Highway 90 and US Highway 90A both branch off Interstate Highway 10 in Seguin and continue eastward to the county line toward Luling and Gonzales. Additionally, the County has two major state highways, State Highway 46 and State Highway 123 that both bisect the County (north to south). Recently completed is State Highway 130, a toll road, which is meant to divert traffic on Interstate Highway 35 around Austin. State Highway 130 begins in Georgetown and travels east of Austin, coming into Guadalupe County on the northeast boundary and connecting to Interstate Highway 10 east of Seguin.

Major commercial construction projects, such as a new Caterpillar plant, a major expansion project by Guadalupe Regional Medical Center, and a new warehouse distribution center by Amazon, significantly contributed to the lower unemployment rate.

The recent increase in employment and sales tax is also attributed to the residual activity from the Eagle Ford Shale oil development in areas south of Guadalupe County. The Eagle Ford Shale gas formation was discovered in 2008 and is unlike many other shale formations because it has both oil and natural gas resources. Located in Southwest Texas from the Mexican border to areas in east Texas, all south of Guadalupe County, the Eagle Ford Shale is estimated to have 20.81 trillion cubic feet of natural gas and 3.351 billion barrels of oil. The formation ranges in depth from 4,000 to 14,000 feet and covers over 3,000 square miles.

### Labor Force Statistics <sup>(1)</sup>

	<u>2018 <sup>(2)</sup></u>	<u>2017 <sup>(3)</sup></u>	<u>2016 <sup>(3)</sup></u>	<u>2015 <sup>(3)</sup></u>
Civilian Labor Force	78,632	77,510	75,830	72,882
Total Employed	76,040	74,946	73,109	70,313
Total Unemployed	2,592	2,564	2,721	2,569
% Unemployment	3.3%	3.3%	3.63%	3.5%
Texas Unemployment	4.0%	4.3%	4.6%	4.4%

(1) Source: Texas Workforce Commission.

(2) As of July 2018.

(3) Average Annual Statistics.

## Comal County, Texas

### General Information

Comal County, Texas (the "County"), a pioneer German settlement, was created in 1846 from Bexar, Gonzales and Travis Counties, Texas. This scenic south central Texas county was named after the Comal Springs and the Comal River that flow through New Braunfels, Texas, the County seat.

The County has an area of 567 square miles. There are seven cities within Comal County, the City of Garden Ridge, the City of Schertz, the City of Selma, the City of Fair Oaks Ranch, the City of Bulverde and the City of New Braunfels.

### Commercial

The County's location between San Antonio and Austin provides opportunities for commuters to live in the county and work in one of the major cities. During 2013, 366 new home sites became available in subdivisions in the unincorporated areas of Comal County.

The County has continued to enjoy a prosperous economy. The major sectors of Comal County's economy, manufacturing, tourism, distribution and real estate continue to grow.

## Major Employers

<u>Employer</u>	<u>Number of Employees</u>
Comal ISD	2,648
Schlitterbahn Water Park	1,689
Wal-Mart Distribution Center	1,237
New Braunfels ISD	1,050
Hunter Industries/Colorado Materials, Inc.	995
Sysco	864
IBEX Corporation	659
Comal County	657
City of New Braunfels	607
GE Oil and Gas	573

### Labor Force Statistics <sup>(1)</sup>

	<u>2018 <sup>(2)</sup></u>	<u>2017 <sup>(3)</sup></u>	<u>2016 <sup>(3)</sup></u>	<u>2015 <sup>(3)</sup></u>
Civilian Labor Force	67,938	66,826	65,377	61,841
Total Employed	65,595	64,580	63,013	59,574
Total Unemployed	2,343	2,246	2,364	2,267
% Unemployment	3.4%	3.4%	3.6%	3.7%
Texas Unemployment	4.0%	4.3%	4.6%	4.4%

(1) Source: Texas Workforce Commission.

(2) As of July 2018.

(3) Average Annual Statistics.

## Bexar County

Bexar County (the “County”) was created in 1836 from Spanish municipality named for Duke de Bexar, a colonial capital of Texas. The County is located in south central Texas and is a component of the Metropolitan Statistical Area (“MSA”) of San Antonio. The San Antonio MSA is one of the nation’s largest MSAs and the third largest MSA in Texas. The principal city within the County is San Antonio, the county seat. The City was founded in the early eighteenth century and was incorporated by the Republic of Texas in 1837.

### Economic Factors

The County has a diversified economic base which is composed of financial services, healthcare, agriculture, manufacturing, construction, military, and tourism. Support for these economic activities is demonstrated by the County’s ongoing commitment to economic development projects along with ongoing infrastructure improvements to support the County’s growing population. As Bexar County has continued to add jobs it has also fared better than the nation with the current unemployment issues.

### Education

The County encompasses 19 independent school districts which include over 400 schools. Enrollment ranges anywhere from nearly 900 in Lackland ISD to over 91,000 in Northside ISD, the fourth largest independent school district in Texas. Students attend school districts in which they reside with no busing in effect. In addition, San Antonio has over 150 private and parochial schools at all education levels. San Antonio has 20 institutions of higher learning offering degrees in all major fields of study, many at the graduate level. Among universities, the University of Texas at San Antonio (UTSA) has over 30,000 students enrolled and has represented many first-time college students within their family. In May of 2009, the Texas A&M University San Antonio became the newest four-year college in San Antonio. Among junior colleges, Alamo Colleges includes five colleges, San Antonio, Palo Alto, St. Phillips, Northeast Lakeview, and Northwest Vista.

### Electric and Gas Services

Electric and gas services to the Bexar County area are provided by CPS Energy (“CPS”), an electric and gas utility owned by the City of San Antonio (the “City”) that maintains and operates certain utilities infrastructure. This infrastructure includes a 16 generating unit electric system and the gas system that serves the Bexar County area. CPS also owns a 40% interest in the South Texas Project (“STP”), two existing nuclear generating units which generate 1,888 megawatts of power for CPS Energy customers. CPS Energy has invested in a 7.625 percent share

of two additional units at STP, once loan guarantees are approved by the federal government the additional units should be online by 2017 and will provide an additional 200 megawatts of power for customers. These nuclear units supplied 34.6% of the electric system native load for the fiscal year ending January 31, 2010.

### Water Supply

Historically and currently, the City obtains all of its water through wells drilled into a geologic formation known as the Edwards Limestone Formation. The portion of the formation supplying water in the City's area has been the "Edward Underground Water Reservoir" (the "Edwards Aquifer") and since 1978 has been designated by the Environmental Protection Agency as a sole-source aquifer under the Safe Drinking Water Act. The Edwards Aquifer lies beneath an area approximately 3,600 square miles in size, and including its recharge zone, it underlies all or part of 13 counties varying from 5 to 30 miles in width and stretching over 175 miles in length, beginning in Brackettville, Kinney County Texas, in the west and stretching to Kyle, Hays, County, Texas in the east. The Edwards Aquifer receives most of its water from rainfall runoff, rivers, and streams flowing across the 4,400 square miles of drainage basins located above it. Much of the Edward Aquifer region consists of agricultural land, but areas of population ranging from communities with only a few hundred residents to urban areas with well over one million citizens exist as well. The Edward Aquifer supplies nearly all the water for the municipal, domestic, industrial, commercial, and agricultural needs in its region.

Employers	Total Number of Employees
Joint Base San Antonio <sup>(1)</sup>	89,661
H.E.B. Grocery Company	23,418
USAA	18,305
Northside Independent School District	13,977
City of San Antonio	11,462
Methodist Healthcare System	9,620
Northeast Independent School District	9,292
University Health System	8,570
San Antonio Independent School District	7,375
Baptist Health System	6,383

(1) Under the BRAC Joint Basing Recommendation for San Antonio, installation support functions at the Army's Fort Sam Houston were combined with those at Randolph and Lackland Air Force Bases under a single organization (Joint Base San Antonio). Includes military personnel and civilian personnel.

### Labor Force Statistics <sup>(1)</sup>

	<u>2018</u> <sup>(2)</sup>	<u>2017</u> <sup>(3)</sup>	<u>2016</u> <sup>(3)</sup>	<u>2015</u> <sup>(3)</sup>
Civilian Labor Force	938,912	924,590	903,856	878,118
Total Employed	905,853	892,277	870,020	844,697
Total Unemployed	33,059	32,313	33,836	33,421
% Unemployment	3.5%	3.5%	3.7%	3.8%
Texas Unemployment	4.0%	4.3%	4.6%	4.4%

(1) Source: Texas Workforce Commission.

(2) As of July 2018.

(3) Average Annual Statistics.



**APPENDIX C**  
**FORM OF LEGAL OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL**

(this page intentionally left blank)



Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP  
300 Convent Street, Suite 2100  
San Antonio, Texas 78205-3792  
United States

Tel +1 210 224 5575  
Fax +1 210 270 7205  
nortonrosefulbright.com

**Draft 9/12/18**

IN REGARD to the authorization and issuance of the "City of Schertz, Texas General Obligation and Refunding Bonds, Series 2018" (the *Bonds*), dated October 15, 2018, in the aggregate principal amount of \$\_\_\_\_\_, we have reviewed the legality and validity of the issuance thereof by the City Council of the City Schertz, Texas (the *Issuer*). The Bonds are issuable in fully registered form only, in denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof (within a Stated Maturity). The Bonds have Stated Maturities of February 1 in each of the years 2019 through 2033, unless redeemed prior to Stated Maturity in accordance with the terms stated on the face of the Bonds. Interest on the Bonds accrues from the dates, at the rates, in the manner, and is payable on the dates, all as provided in the ordinance (the *Ordinance*) authorizing the issuance of the Bonds. Capitalized terms used herein without definition shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Ordinance.

WE HAVE SERVED AS BOND COUNSEL for the Issuer solely to pass upon the legality and validity of the issuance of the Bonds under the laws of the State of Texas, the defeasance and discharge of the Issuer's obligations being refunded by the Bonds, and with respect to the exclusion of the interest on the Bonds from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes and for no other purpose. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not independently investigated or verified, any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer. We have not assumed any responsibility with respect to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the sufficiency of the security for or the marketability of the Bonds. Our role in connection with the Issuer's Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

WE HAVE EXAMINED the applicable and pertinent laws of the State of Texas and the United States of America. In rendering the opinions herein we rely upon (1) original or certified copies of the proceedings of the City Council of the Issuer in connection with the issuance of the Bonds, including the Ordinance, the Escrow Deposit Letter (the *Escrow Agreement*) between the Issuer and UMB Bank, N.A., Austin, Texas (the *Escrow Agent*), and the certification (the *Sufficiency Certificate*) by SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., as Financial Advisor to the Issuer, concerning the sufficiency of the cash and investments deposited with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement; (2) customary certifications and opinions of officials of the Issuer; (3) certificates executed by officers of the Issuer relating to the expected use and investment of proceeds of the Bonds and certain other funds of the Issuer, and to certain other facts solely within the knowledge and control of the Issuer; and (4) such other documentation, including an examination of the Bonds executed and delivered initially by the Issuer, and such matters of law as we deem relevant to the matters discussed below. In such examination, we have assumed the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the conformity to

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP is a limited liability partnership registered under the laws of Texas.

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Norton Rose Fulbright LLP, Norton Rose Fulbright Australia, Norton Rose Fulbright Canada LLP and Norton Rose Fulbright South Africa Inc are separate legal entities and all of them are members of Norton Rose Fulbright Verein, a Swiss verein. Norton Rose Fulbright Verein helps coordinate the activities of the members but does not itself provide legal services to clients. Details of each entity, with certain regulatory information, are available at [nortonrosefulbright.com](http://nortonrosefulbright.com).

**Legal Opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, in connection with the authorization and issuance of "CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS GENERAL OBLIGATION AND REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2018"**

original copies of all documents submitted to us as certified copies, and the accuracy of the statements and information contained in such certificates. We express no opinion concerning any effect on the following opinions which may result from changes in law effected after the date hereof.

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS OUR OPINION that the Escrow Agreement has been duly authorized, executed, and delivered by the Issuer and, assuming due authorization, execution, and delivery thereof by the Escrow Agent, is a valid and binding obligation, enforceable in accordance with its terms (except to the extent that the enforceability thereof may be affected by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights or the exercise of judicial discretion in accordance with general principles of equity), and that the outstanding obligations refunded, discharged, paid, and retired with certain proceeds of the Bonds have been defeased and are regarded as being outstanding only for the purpose of receiving payment from the funds held in trust with the Escrow Agent, pursuant to the Escrow Agreement and the ordinance authorizing their issuance, and in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 1207, as amended, Texas Government Code. In rendering this opinion, we have relied upon the Sufficiency Certificate concerning the sufficiency of the cash and investments deposited with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement for the purposes of paying the outstanding obligations refunded and to be retired with the proceeds of the Bonds and the interest thereon.

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION that the Bonds have been duly authorized and issued in conformity with the laws of the State of Texas now in force and that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the Issuer enforceable in accordance with the terms and conditions described therein, except to the extent that the enforceability thereof may be affected by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights or the exercise of judicial discretion in accordance with general principles of equity. The Bonds are payable from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied, within the limitations prescribed by law, upon all taxable property in the Issuer.

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION that, assuming continuing compliance after the date hereof by the Issuer with the provisions of the Ordinance and in reliance upon the Sufficiency Certificate concerning the sufficiency of the cash and investments deposited with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement and upon the representations and certifications of the Issuer made in a certificate of even date herewith pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds, under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) interest on the Bonds will be excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the *Code*), of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, pursuant to section 103 of the Code, and (2) interest on the Bonds will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof who are individuals or, except as hereinafter described, corporations.

FOR TAXABLE YEARS THAT BEGAN BEFORE JANUARY 1, 2018, interest on the Bonds owned by a corporation will be included in such corporation's adjusted current earnings for

**Legal Opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, in connection with the authorization and issuance of "CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS GENERAL OBLIGATION AND REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2018"**

purposes of computing the alternative minimum tax on such corporation, other than an S corporation, a qualified mutual fund, a real estate investment trust, a real estate mortgage investment conduit, or a financial asset securitization investment trust. The alternative minimum tax on corporations has been repealed for taxable years beginning on or after January 1, 2018.

WE EXPRESS NO OTHER OPINION with respect to any other federal, state, or local tax consequences under present law or any proposed legislation resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Bonds. Ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement Benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income credit, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED on existing law, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service; rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law that we deem relevant to such opinions and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above.

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP

(this page intentionally left blank)

**APPENDIX D**

**EXCERPTS FROM THE CITY'S AUDITED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017**

**(Not intended to be a complete statement of the Issuer's financial condition.  
Reference is made to the complete Annual Financial Report for further information.)**

(this page intentionally left blank)





## INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Honorable Mayor and  
Members of the City Council  
City of Schertz, Texas

### **Report on the Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of City of Schertz, as of and for the year ended September 30, 2017, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise City of Schertz's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

### ***Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements***

City of Schertz's management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

### ***Auditor's Responsibility***

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

## ***Opinions***

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, the business-type activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of City of Schertz, as of September 30, 2017, and the respective changes in financial position and, where applicable, cash flows thereof for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

## ***Other Matters***

### ***Required Supplementary Information***

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that management's discussion and analysis, budgetary comparison information, schedule of changes in net pension liabilities and related ratios and the schedule of contributions, as listed in the table of contents, be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. The budgetary comparison information is the responsibility of management and was derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the budgetary comparison information is fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole. We have applied certain limited procedures to required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on management's discussion and analysis, budgetary comparison information, and schedule of changes in net pension liabilities and related ratios and the schedule of contributions because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

### ***Other Information***

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise City of Schertz's basic financial statements. The comparative financial statements, combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, introductory section, and statistical section are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements.

The comparative financial statements and combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the comparative, combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements are fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole. The introductory and statistical sections have not been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements, and accordingly, we do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on it.

### **Other Reporting Required by *Government Auditing Standards***

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated March 6, 2018 on our consideration of City of Schertz's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering City of Schertz's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

A handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "Armstrong, Vaughan & Associates, P.C.".

Armstrong, Vaughan & Associates, P.C.

March 6, 2018

(this page intentionally left blank)

## MANAGEMENTS DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

As management of the City of Schertz, we offer readers of the City's financial statements this narrative overview and analysis of the financial activities of the City of Schertz for the fiscal year ended September 30, 2017. We encourage readers to consider the information presented here in conjunction with additional information that we have furnished in our letter of transmittal, which can be found in the introductory section of this report.

### **Financial Highlights**

The assets of the City of Schertz exceeded its liabilities at the close of the most recent fiscal year by \$197.8 million (net position). Of this amount, \$23.0 million (unrestricted net position) may be used to meet the City's ongoing obligations to citizens and creditors.

The City's total net position increased by \$24.3 million. A significant portion of this increase, 66.4%, is attributable to capital contributions from developers.

As of the close of the current fiscal year, the City's governmental funds reported combined ending fund balances of \$49.1 million, an increase of \$10.1 million in comparison with the prior year.

At the end of the fiscal year, the combined total of the General Fund assigned and unassigned fund balances was \$10.8 million which is 45.5% of the general fund expenditures not including capital outlay. The fund balance policy is to reserve a 26% balance.

During the fiscal year, the City issued \$9.41 million in general obligation bonds and certificates of obligation of which \$540,000 is allocated to the proprietary fund.

### **Overview of the Financial Statements**

This discussion and analysis is intended to serve as an introduction to the City's basic financial statements. The City's basic financial statements comprise three components: 1) government-wide financial statements, 2) fund financial statements, and 3) notes to the financial statements. This report also contains other supplementary information in addition to the basic financial statements themselves.

Government-wide financial statements. The government-wide financial statements are designed to provide readers with a broad overview of the City's finances, in a manner similar to a private-sector business.

The statement of net position presents information on all of the City's assets and liabilities, with the difference between the two reported as net position. Over time, increases or decreases in net position may serve as a useful indicator of whether the financial position of the City of Schertz is improving or deteriorating.

The statement of activities presents information showing how the City's net position changed during the most recent fiscal year. All changes in net position are reported as soon as the underlying event giving to the change occurs, regardless of the timing of related cash flows. Thus, revenues and expenses are reported in this statement for some items that will only result in cash flows in future fiscal periods (e.g. uncollected taxes and earned but unused vacation leave).

Both of the government-wide financial statements distinguish functions of the City of Schertz that are principally supported by taxes and intergovernmental revenues (governmental activities) from other functions that are intended to recover all or a significant portion of their costs through user fees and charges (business-type activities). The governmental activities of the City of Schertz include general government, public safety, streets and parks, health, and culture and recreation. The business-type

activities of the City of Schertz include a water and sewer department and an emergency medical services department.

Fund financial statements. A fund is a grouping of related accounts that is used to maintain control over resources that have been segregated for specific activities or objectives. The City of Schertz, like other state and local governments, uses fund accounting to ensure and demonstrate compliance with finance-related legal requirements. The funds of the City of Schertz can be divided into two categories: governmental and proprietary.

Governmental funds. Governmental funds are used to account for essentially the same functions reported as governmental activities in the government-wide financial statements. However, unlike the government-wide financial statements, governmental fund financial statements focus on near term inflows and outflows of spendable resources, as well as on balances of spendable resources available at the end of the fiscal year. Such information is useful in evaluating a government's near-term financing requirements.

Because the focus of governmental funds is narrower than that of the government-wide financial statements, it is useful to compare the information presented for governmental funds with similar information presented for governmental activities in the government-wide financial statements. By doing so, readers may better understand the long-term impact of the government's near-term financing decisions. Both the governmental fund balance sheet and the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances provide a reconciliation to facilitate this comparison between governmental funds and governmental activities.

The City of Schertz maintains thirteen individual governmental funds. Information is presented separately in the governmental fund balance sheet and in the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances for the general fund, the debt service fund, the economic development corporation and the capital projects fund, all of which are considered to be major funds. Data from the other seven governmental funds are combined into a single, aggregated presentation. Individual fund data for each of these non-major governmental funds is provided in the form of combining statements elsewhere in this report.

Proprietary funds. The City of Schertz maintains one type of proprietary fund. Enterprise funds are used to report the same functions presented as business-type activities in the government-wide financial statements. The City of Schertz uses enterprise funds to account for its water and sewer department and for its emergency medical services department.

Proprietary funds provide the same type of information as the government-wide financial statements, only in more detail. The proprietary fund financial statements provide separate information for the water and sewer department and for the emergency medical services department, both of which are considered to be major funds of the City of Schertz.

Notes to the financial statements. The notes provide additional information that is essential to a full understanding of the data provided in the government-wide and fund financial statements.

Other information. In addition to the basic financial statements and accompanying notes, this report also presents certain required supplementary information concerning the City's general fund budgetary schedule. The City of Schertz adopts an annual appropriated budget for its general fund. A budgetary comparison schedule has been provided for the general fund to demonstrate compliance with this budget. The economic development corporation also adopts an annual budget, and a comparison schedule for it also is provided in the required supplementary information.

The combining statements referred to earlier in connection with non-major governmental funds are presented immediately following the required supplementary information.

### Government-wide Financial Analysis

As noted earlier, net position may serve over time as a useful indicator of a government's financial position. In the case of the City of Schertz, assets exceeded liabilities by \$197.8 million at the close of the most recent fiscal year.

The largest portion of the City's total net position (78%) reflects its net investment in capital assets (e.g., land, buildings, machinery, and equipment) less any related debt used to acquire those assets that is still outstanding, plus bond proceeds that have not yet been signed. The City of Schertz uses these capital assets to provide services to citizens; consequently, these assets are not available for operational type of future spending. Although the City's investment in its capital assets is reported net of related debt, it should be noted that the resources needed to repay this debt must be provided from other sources, since the capital assets themselves cannot be used to liquidate these liabilities.

An additional portion of the City's total net position (10.4%) represents resources that are subject to external restrictions on how they may be used. The remaining balance of unrestricted net position, \$23.0 million, may be used to meet the government's ongoing obligations to citizens and creditors.

At the end of the current fiscal year, the City of Schertz is able to report positive balances in all three categories of net position, both for the government as a whole, as well as for its separate governmental and business-type activities. The same situation held true for the prior fiscal year.

**TABLE A-1**  
**NET POSITION**

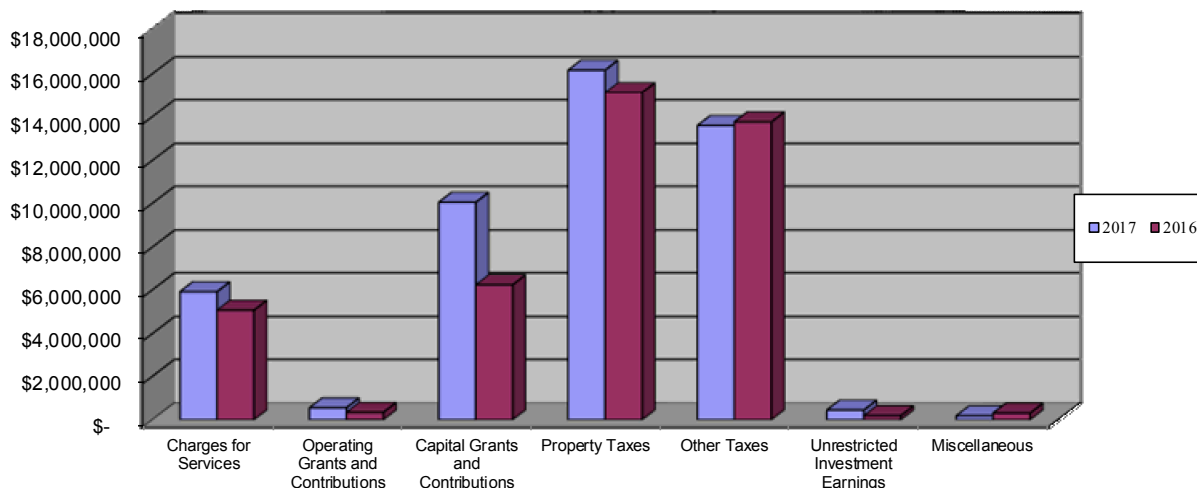
	Governmental Activities		Business-Type Activities		Total	
	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016
Current and Other Assets	\$ 53,489,898	\$ 45,626,048	\$ 34,305,074	\$ 28,142,800	\$ 87,794,972	\$ 73,768,848
Capital Assets	133,989,421	125,109,658	75,578,798	71,023,364	209,568,219	196,133,022
Total Assets	<u>187,479,319</u>	<u>170,735,706</u>	<u>109,883,872</u>	<u>99,166,164</u>	<u>297,363,191</u>	<u>269,901,870</u>
Deferred Outflows	3,637,434	3,985,590	997,659	1,082,823	4,635,093	5,068,413
Current Liabilities	7,331,101	9,650,691	5,029,905	4,646,767	12,361,006	14,297,458
Long-Term Liabilities	76,793,511	71,506,935	14,709,300	15,654,519	91,502,811	87,161,454
Total Liabilities	<u>84,124,612</u>	<u>81,157,626</u>	<u>19,739,205</u>	<u>20,301,286</u>	<u>103,863,817</u>	<u>101,458,912</u>
Deferred Inflows	344,220	-	-	-	344,220	-
Net Investment in						
Capital Assets	84,537,238	74,237,004	70,361,035	64,210,231	154,898,273	138,447,235
Restricted	20,437,116	17,095,325	-	-	20,437,116	17,095,325
Unrestricted	1,673,567	2,231,341	20,781,291	15,737,470	22,454,858	17,968,811
Total Net Position	<u>\$ 106,647,921</u>	<u>\$ 93,563,670</u>	<u>\$ 91,142,326</u>	<u>\$ 79,947,701</u>	<u>\$ 197,790,247</u>	<u>\$ 173,511,371</u>

The government's net position increased by \$24.3 million during the current fiscal year. Sixty-six percent of this increase represents capital contributions from developers. The following table indicates changes in net position for governmental and business-type activities followed by graphs displaying total revenues and expenses by type:

**TABLE A-2**  
**CHANGES IN NET POSITION FOR GOVERNMENTAL AND BUSINESS-TYPE ACTIVITIES**

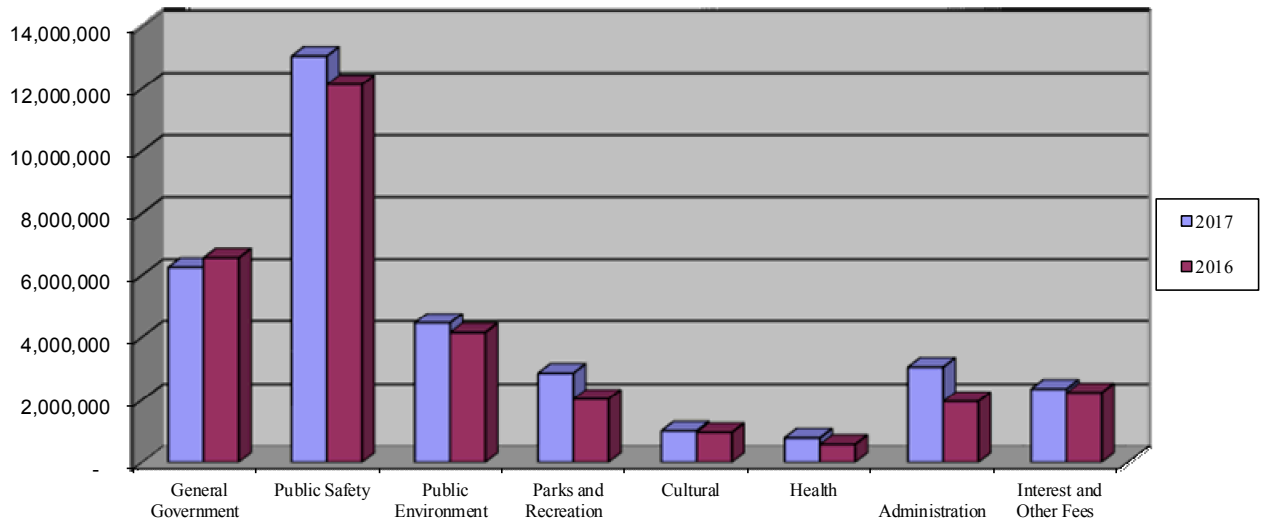
	Governmental Activities		Business-Type Activities		Total	
	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016
<b>Revenues:</b>						
Program Revenues:						
Charges for Services	\$ 5,910,899	\$ 5,067,903	\$ 31,757,607	\$ 27,925,017	\$ 37,668,506	\$ 32,992,920
Operating Contributions	552,878	342,485	-	-	552,878	342,485
Capital Contributions	10,043,483	6,227,664	6,111,474	2,831,126	16,154,957	9,058,790
General Revenues						
Property Taxes	16,166,006	15,131,997	-	-	16,166,006	15,131,997
Other Taxes	13,595,041	13,760,248	-	-	13,595,041	13,760,248
Investment Earnings	448,408	187,847	211,466	102,642	659,874	290,489
Miscellaneous	182,754	309,275	475,733	522,221	658,487	831,496
<b>Total Revenues</b>	<b>46,899,469</b>	<b>41,027,419</b>	<b>38,556,280</b>	<b>31,381,006</b>	<b>85,455,749</b>	<b>72,408,425</b>
<b>Expenses:</b>						
General Government	6,253,926	6,557,778	-	-	6,253,926	6,557,778
Public Safety	13,061,120	12,141,968	-	-	13,061,120	12,141,968
Public Environment	4,460,540	4,147,653	-	-	4,460,540	4,147,653
Parks and Recreation	2,859,974	2,034,964	-	-	2,859,974	2,034,964
Cultural	1,004,747	954,871	-	-	1,004,747	954,871
Health	776,494	570,204	-	-	776,494	570,204
Administration	3,052,102	1,954,276	-	-	3,052,102	1,954,276
Interest and Other Fees	2,355,714	2,240,783	-	-	2,355,714	2,240,783
Water and Sewer	-	-	21,346,078	20,269,111	21,346,078	20,269,111
EMS	-	-	6,006,178	5,004,110	6,006,178	5,004,110
<b>Total Expenses</b>	<b>33,824,617</b>	<b>30,602,497</b>	<b>27,352,256</b>	<b>25,273,221</b>	<b>61,176,873</b>	<b>55,875,718</b>
<b>INCREASE IN NET POSITION BEFORE TRANSFERS</b>	<b>13,074,852</b>	<b>10,424,922</b>	<b>11,204,024</b>	<b>6,107,785</b>	<b>24,278,876</b>	<b>16,532,707</b>
Transfers	9,399	29,211	(9,399)	(29,211)	-	-
<b>CHANGE IN NET POSITION</b>	<b>13,084,251</b>	<b>10,454,133</b>	<b>11,194,625</b>	<b>6,078,574</b>	<b>24,278,876</b>	<b>16,532,707</b>
<b>BEGINNING NET POSITION</b>	<b>93,563,670</b>	<b>83,109,537</b>	<b>79,947,701</b>	<b>73,869,127</b>	<b>173,511,371</b>	<b>156,978,664</b>
<b>ENDING NET POSITION</b>	<b>\$ 106,647,921</b>	<b>\$ 93,563,670</b>	<b>\$ 91,142,326</b>	<b>\$ 79,947,701</b>	<b>\$ 197,790,247</b>	<b>\$ 173,511,371</b>

**TOTAL REVENUES-GOVERNMENT-WIDE**



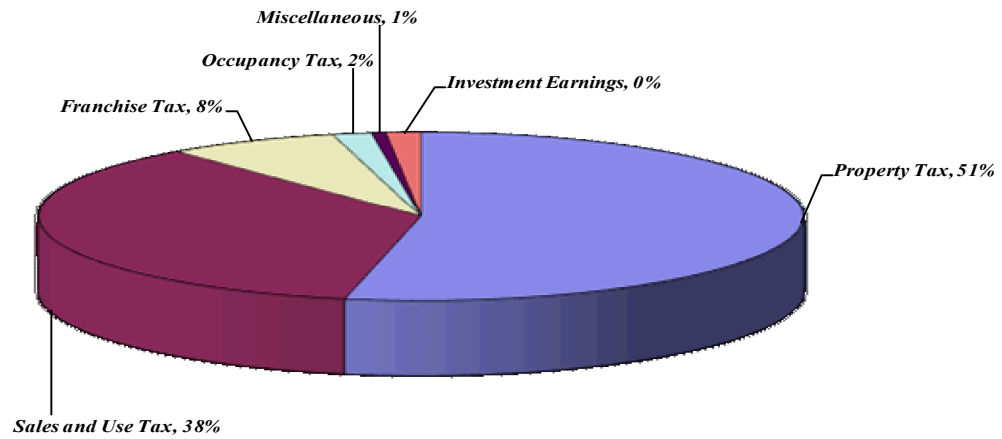


### TOTAL EXPENSES-GOVERNMENT-WIDE



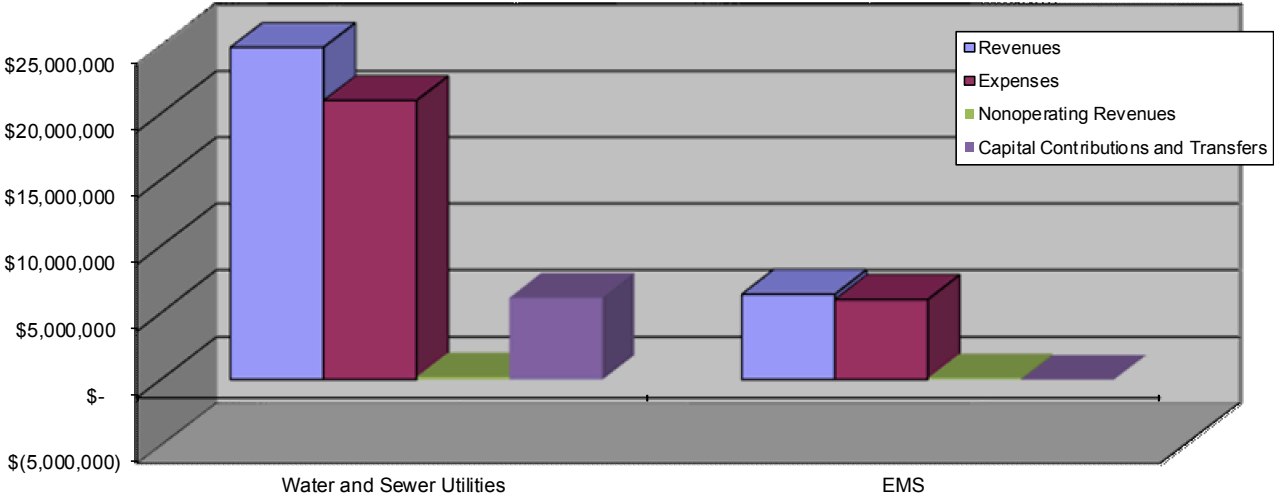
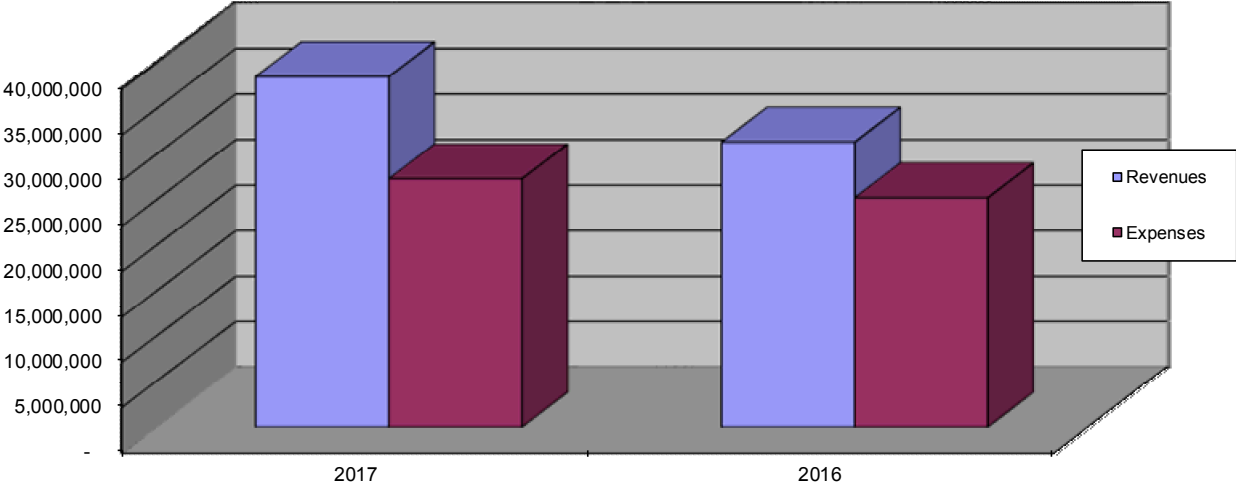
### Revenues-Governmental Activities (Continued)

#### General Revenue by Source - Governmental Activities



**Business-Type Activities**

Business-Type activities accounted for 45.9% of the growth in the net position of the City of Schertz. Of this increase, 54.6% is the result of capital contributions from developers. For the most part, increases in expenses closely paralleled inflation and the change in revenues was primarily related to fluctuations in capital contributions from developers.



## **Financial Analysis of the Government's Funds**

As noted earlier, the City of Schertz uses fund accounting to ensure and demonstrate compliance with finance-related legal requirements.

**Governmental funds.** The focus of the City's governmental funds is to provide information on near-term inflows, outflows, and balances of spendable resources. Such information is useful in assessing the City's financing requirements. In particular, unassigned fund balance may serve as a useful measure of a government's net resources available for spending at the end of the fiscal year.

As of the end of the current fiscal year, the City's governmental funds reported combined ending fund balances of \$49.1 million. Of this total amount, \$10.0 million constitutes unassigned fund balance, which is available for spending at the government's discretion. The remainder of fund balance is non-spendable, restricted, or assigned to indicate that it is not available for new spending because it has already been committed to pay debt service, for capital improvement projects, and other assigned purposes.

The general fund is the chief operating fund of the City of Schertz. At the end of the current fiscal year, unassigned fund balance of the general fund was \$10.0 million, while total fund balance was \$13.0 million, an increase of \$1.5 million from the prior year. As a measure of the general fund's liquidity, it may be useful to compare both unassigned fund balance and total fund balance to total fund expenditures. Unassigned fund balance represents 41.8% of total general fund expenditures, not including capital.

The debt service fund has a total fund balance of \$1.5 million all of which is restricted for the payment of debt service. The net increase in fund balance during the current year in the debt service fund was \$0.1 million.

The capital projects fund has a total fund balance of \$16.9 million, an increase of \$5.3 million. The City issued \$8.87 million in new governmental bonds to supplement capital project activity during the year.

**Proprietary funds.** The City's proprietary funds provide the same type of information found in the government-wide financial statements, but in more detail. Unrestricted net position of the water and sewer fund at the end of the year amounted to \$20.2 million and those for the Schertz EMS fund amounted to \$1.1 million. The proprietary fund issued \$540 thousand in new bonds to supplement capital project activity during the year.

## **General Fund Budgetary Highlights**

The General Fund expenditures were \$939 thousand less than the \$25.5 million budget. This was the result of cost savings across most of the General Fund. Revenues were higher by \$796 thousand than budgeted. Overall, the fund balance increased by \$1.5 million higher than budgeted.

## CAPITAL ASSET AND DEBT ADMINISTRATION

**Capital assets.** The City's investment in capital assets for its governmental and business-type activities as of September 30, 2017, amounts to \$209.6 million (net of accumulated depreciation). Developers contributed \$15.4 million in infrastructure during the year. The City also has several projects in progress from voter approved bonds. Additional information on the City's capital assets can be found in the note 7 to the basic financial statements.

**TABLE A-3**  
CAPITAL ASSETS  
(Net of Depreciation)

	Governmental Activities		Business-Type Activities		Total	
	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016
Land	\$ 7,499,108	\$ 7,499,108	\$ 1,354,138	\$ 1,354,138	\$ 8,853,246	\$ 8,853,246
Water Rights	-	-	70,245	70,245	70,245	70,245
Buildings and Improvements	43,677,947	43,607,412	4,660,001	4,660,001	48,337,948	48,267,413
Machinery, Equipment, and Vehicles	10,347,015	9,282,067	5,013,077	5,095,324	15,360,092	14,377,391
Infrastructure	109,303,478	100,003,048	92,807,350	85,890,831	202,110,828	185,893,879
Construction in Progress	13,632,514	9,832,153	2,907,404	2,681,683	16,539,918	12,513,836
Accumulated Depreciation	<u>(50,470,641)</u>	<u>(45,114,130)</u>	<u>(31,233,417)</u>	<u>(28,728,858)</u>	<u>(81,704,058)</u>	<u>(73,842,988)</u>
TOTALS	<u>\$ 133,989,421</u>	<u>\$ 125,109,658</u>	<u>\$ 75,578,798</u>	<u>\$ 71,023,364</u>	<u>\$ 209,568,219</u>	<u>\$ 196,133,022</u>

**Long-Term Debt.** At the end of the current fiscal year, the City of Schertz had total bonded debt outstanding of \$76.7 million. The related principal and interest payment for the bonds are backed by an annual ad valorem tax levied against all taxable property within the City. The City of Schertz maintains a "AA+" rating from Standard and Poors. Additional information on the City's long-term debt can be found in note 10 to the basic financial statements.

**TABLE A-4**

	Governmental Activities		Business-Type Activities		Total	
	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016
General Obligation Bonds	\$ 55,225,000	\$ 54,995,000	\$ 2,530,000	\$ 3,010,000	\$ 57,755,000	\$ 58,005,000
Certificates of Obligation	8,560,000	3,850,000	8,050,000	8,220,000	16,610,000	12,070,000
Tax Notes and Leases	<u>1,230,000</u>	<u>1,740,000</u>	<u>1,065,000</u>	<u>1,360,000</u>	<u>2,295,000</u>	<u>3,100,000</u>
TOTALS	<u>\$ 65,015,000</u>	<u>\$ 60,585,000</u>	<u>\$ 11,645,000</u>	<u>\$ 12,590,000</u>	<u>\$ 76,660,000</u>	<u>\$ 73,175,000</u>

## **Economic Factors and Next Year's Budgets and Rates**

At the end of the last fiscal year, the assigned and unassigned fund balance in the general fund increased to \$10.0 million. The City of Schertz has appropriated \$1.5 million of this amount for spending in the 2018 fiscal year budget. The approved tax rate decreased marginally to \$0.4910 per \$100 of valuation. Each year the City updates its five-year budgeting forecast and has implemented a long-term debt model to assist management in making informed financial decisions that will impact the community now and in the future.

## **Requests for Information**

This financial report is designed to provide a general overview of the City's finances for all those with an interest in the government's finances. Questions concerning any of the information provided in this report or requests for additional financial information should be addressed to the Office of the Finance Director, City of Schertz, 1400 Schertz Parkway, Schertz, Texas 78154.



## BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Primary Government		
	Governmental Activities	Business-Type Activities	Total
<b>ASSETS</b>			
<i>Current Assets:</i>			
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 5,265,632	\$ 2,353,733	\$ 7,619,365
Investments	42,160,733	10,277,545	52,438,278
Receivables (net of allowances)			
Taxes	2,751,714	-	2,751,714
Accounts and Other	1,678,132	5,812,200	7,490,332
Current Service Concession Arrangement Receivable	90,909	-	90,909
Accrued Interest Income	7,949	6,324	14,273
Inventories	98,263	133,430	231,693
Internal Balances	59,044	(59,044)	-
<i>Total Current Assets</i>	<u>52,112,376</u>	<u>18,524,188</u>	<u>70,636,564</u>
<i>Noncurrent Assets:</i>			
Restricted Assets:			
Cash and Cash Equivalents	617,075	1,444,226	2,061,301
Investments	-	14,336,660	14,336,660
Service Concession Arrangement Receivable	760,447	-	760,447
Capital Assets:			
Land	7,499,108	1,354,138	8,853,246
Water Rights	-	70,245	70,245
Buildings and Improvements	43,677,947	4,660,001	48,337,948
Equipment and Vehicles	10,347,015	5,013,077	15,360,092
Infrastructure	109,303,478	92,807,350	202,110,828
Construction in Progress	13,632,514	2,907,404	16,539,918
Accumulated Depreciation	(50,470,641)	(31,233,417)	(81,704,058)
<i>Total Noncurrent Assets</i>	<u>135,366,943</u>	<u>91,359,684</u>	<u>226,726,627</u>
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>187,479,319</u>	<u>109,883,872</u>	<u>297,363,191</u>
<b>DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>			
Deferred Loss on Debt Refundings	733,620	89,998	823,618
Deferred Pension Related Outflows	2,903,814	907,661	3,811,475
<b>TOTAL DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>	<u>\$ 3,637,434</u>	<u>\$ 997,659</u>	<u>\$ 4,635,093</u>

See Accompanying notes to basic financial statements.



CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Primary Government		Total
	Governmental Activities	Business-Type Activities	
<b>LIABILITIES</b>			
<i>Current Liabilities:</i>			
Accounts Payable	\$ 884,188	\$ 2,094,236	\$ 2,978,424
Accrued Liabilities	654,117	176,160	830,277
Due to Other Governments	119,149	-	119,149
Unearned Revenue	35,346	431,098	466,444
Accrued Interest Payable	445,372	63,571	508,943
Compensated Absences	213,970	62,125	276,095
Customer Deposits	54,200	590,618	644,818
Current Service Concession Arrangement (Liability)	54,153	-	54,153
Current Portion of Long-Term Debt	4,870,606	1,612,097	6,482,703
<i>Total Current Liabilities</i>	<u>7,331,101</u>	<u>5,029,905</u>	<u>12,361,006</u>
<i>Noncurrent Liabilities:</i>			
Compensated Absences	855,879	248,500	1,104,379
Net Other Post-Employment Benefit Payable	506,934	148,821	655,755
Net Pension Liability	12,968,145	4,057,950	17,026,095
Service Concession Arrangement (Liability)	452,983	-	452,983
Long-Term Debt	62,009,570	10,254,029	72,263,599
<i>Total Noncurrent Liabilities</i>	<u>76,793,511</u>	<u>14,709,300</u>	<u>91,502,811</u>
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>	<u>84,124,612</u>	<u>19,739,205</u>	<u>103,863,817</u>
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>			
Deferred Service Concession Arrangement	344,220	-	344,220
<b>TOTAL DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>	<u>344,220</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>344,220</u>
<b>NET POSITION</b>			
Net Investment In Capital Assets	84,537,238	70,361,035	154,898,273
Restricted For:			
Police and Municipal Court	1,243,281	-	1,243,281
PEG Capital Fees	638,506	-	638,506
Tourism Development	1,503,873	-	1,503,873
Economic Development	15,069,420	-	15,069,420
Parks and Tree Mitigation	699,725	-	699,725
Debt Service	1,087,260	-	1,087,260
Scholarships and Other Purposes	195,051	-	195,051
Unrestricted	1,673,567	20,781,291	22,454,858
<b>TOTAL NET POSITION</b>	<u>\$ 106,647,921</u>	<u>\$ 91,142,326</u>	<u>\$ 197,790,247</u>

See Accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

<b>Functions and Programs</b>	Expenses	Program Revenues		
		Charges for Services	Operating Grants and Contributions	Capital Grants and Contributions
<b>Primary Government:</b>				
<i>Governmental Activities:</i>				
General Government	\$ 6,253,926	\$ 874,737	\$ 189,264	\$ 10,042,931
Public Safety	13,061,120	4,131,548	210,681	-
Public Environment	4,460,540	-	-	-
Parks and Recreation	2,859,974	544,460	129,148	-
Cultural	1,004,747	330,412	4,144	-
Health	776,494	29,742	19,641	552
Administration	3,052,102	-	-	-
Interest	2,355,714	-	-	-
<i>Total Governmental Activities</i>	<u>33,824,617</u>	<u>5,910,899</u>	<u>552,878</u>	<u>10,043,483</u>
<i>Business-Type Activities</i>				
Water and Sewer	21,346,078	25,390,713	-	6,111,474
EMS	6,006,178	6,366,894	-	-
<i>Total Business-Type Activities</i>	<u>27,352,256</u>	<u>31,757,607</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>6,111,474</u>
<b>Total Primary Government</b>	<u>\$ 61,176,873</u>	<u>\$ 37,668,506</u>	<u>\$ 552,878</u>	<u>\$ 16,154,957</u>

**General Revenues:**

Taxes:

Ad Valorem

Sales

Franchise Fees

Hotel/Motel

Mixed Drink

Investment Earnings

Miscellaneous

**Total General Revenues**

Transfers

Change in Net Position

Net Position at Beginning of Year

Net Position at End of Year

See Accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

Net (Expense) Revenue and  
Changes in Net Position

Primary Government		
Governmental Activities	Business-Type Activities	Total
\$ 4,853,006		\$ 4,853,006
(8,718,891)		(8,718,891)
(4,460,540)		(4,460,540)
(2,186,366)		(2,186,366)
(670,191)		(670,191)
(726,559)		(726,559)
(3,052,102)		(3,052,102)
(2,355,714)		(2,355,714)
(17,317,357)		(17,317,357)
	\$ 10,156,109	10,156,109
	360,716	360,716
	10,516,825	10,516,825
(17,317,357)	10,516,825	(6,800,532)
16,166,006	-	16,166,006
10,844,503	-	10,844,503
2,208,373	-	2,208,373
499,466	-	499,466
42,699	-	42,699
448,408	211,466	659,874
182,754	475,733	658,487
30,392,209	687,199	31,079,408
9,399	(9,399)	-
13,084,251	11,194,625	24,278,876
93,563,670	79,947,701	173,511,371
\$ 106,647,921	\$ 91,142,326	\$ 197,790,247

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
BALANCE SHEET – GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	General Fund	Capital Projects	Debt Service
	<u>          </u>	<u>          </u>	<u>          </u>
<b>ASSETS</b>			
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 2,062,393	\$ 1,753,815	\$ 59,148
Investments	9,485,725	15,546,171	1,390,934
Receivables (net of allowances)			
Taxes	1,970,300	-	82,550
Accounts and Other	1,677,633	-	-
Inventory	98,263	-	-
Restricted Assets:			
Cash and Cash Equivalents	617,075	-	-
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u><u>\$ 15,911,389</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 17,299,986</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 1,532,632</u></u>
 <b>LIABILITIES, DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES AND FUND BALANCES</b>			
<i>Liabilities:</i>			
Accounts Payable	\$ 544,406	\$ 267,949	\$ -
Accrued Salaries and Benefits	653,700	-	-
Customer Deposits	54,200	-	-
Due to Other Governments	119,149	-	-
Due to Other Funds	(175,084)	116,040	-
Unearned Revenues	35,346	-	-
<i>Total Liabilities</i>	<u>1,231,717</u>	<u>383,989</u>	<u>-</u>
 <i>Deferred Inflows of Resources:</i>			
Unavailable Revenues	<u>1,710,054</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>82,550</u>
 <i>Fund Balances:</i>			
Nonspendable:			
Inventory	98,263	-	-
Restricted for:			
Police and Public Safety/Municipal Court	101,842	-	-
Municipal Court	728,350	-	-
PEG Capital Fees	638,506	-	-
Capital Improvement	-	16,915,997	-
Debt Service	-	-	1,450,082
Tourism Development	-	-	-
Parks and Tree Mitigation	-	-	-
Historical Committee and Library	-	-	-
Economic Development	-	-	-
Animal Control	35,660	-	-
Veterans	4,796	-	-
Scholarships	77,458	-	-
Committed for Civic Center/CIED	454,376	-	-
Assigned for:			
Property Replacement	854,198	-	-
Unassigned	9,976,169	-	-
<i>Total Fund Balances</i>	<u>12,969,618</u>	<u>16,915,997</u>	<u>1,450,082</u>
 <b>TOTAL LIABILITIES, DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES AND FUND BALANCES</b>	 <u><u>\$ 15,911,389</u></u>	 <u><u>\$ 17,299,986</u></u>	 <u><u>\$ 1,532,632</u></u>

See Accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

<u>Economic Development Corporation</u>	<u>Nonmajor Governmental Funds</u>	<u>Total Governmental Funds</u>
\$ 893,858	\$ 496,421	\$ 5,265,635
13,506,156	2,231,747	42,160,733
665,316	33,548	2,751,714
8,448	-	1,686,081
-	-	98,263
-	-	617,075
<u>\$ 15,073,778</u>	<u>\$ 2,761,716</u>	<u>\$ 52,579,501</u>
\$ 3,940	\$ 67,892	\$ 884,187
417	-	654,117
-	-	54,200
-	-	119,149
-	-	(59,044)
-	-	35,346
<u>4,357</u>	<u>67,892</u>	<u>1,687,955</u>
-	-	1,792,604
-	-	98,263
-	413,089	514,931
-	-	728,350
-	-	638,506
-	-	16,915,997
-	-	1,450,082
-	1,503,873	1,503,873
-	699,725	699,725
-	77,137	77,137
15,069,421	-	15,069,421
-	-	35,660
-	-	4,796
-	-	77,458
-	-	454,376
-	-	854,198
-	-	9,976,169
<u>15,069,421</u>	<u>2,693,824</u>	<u>49,098,942</u>
<u>\$ 15,073,778</u>	<u>\$ 2,761,716</u>	<u>\$ 52,579,501</u>



CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
RECONCILIATION OF BALANCE SHEET  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

TOTAL FUND BALANCE - TOTAL GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS		\$ 49,098,942
Amounts reported for governmental activities in the Statement of Net Position are different because:		
Capital Assets used in governmental activities are not financial resources and, therefore, are not reported in the funds.		133,989,421
Other long-term assets are not available to pay for current-period expenditures and, therefore, are not recognized as revenue in the funds.		1,792,604
The governmental funds report other post-employment benefit contributions as expenditures when they become due and payable. However, in the statement of activities differences between other post-employment benefit contributions and actuarially determined costs are reported as an obligation.		(506,934)
Long-term liabilities, including bonds payable and capital leases, are not due and payable in the current period and therefore, not reported in the funds:		
Bonds Payable	(65,015,000)	
Unamortized Premiums, Discounts, Losses on Refundings	(1,106,409)	
Capital Lease Payable	(25,151)	
Accrued Interest Payable	(445,372)	
Compensated Absences	<u>(1,069,849)</u>	(67,661,781)
Service Concession Arrangements (and related deferred inflows and outflows of resources) do not consume current financial resources and are not reported in governmental funds:		
Service Concession Arrangement (Liability)	(507,136)	
Service Concession Arrangement Receivable	851,356	
Deferred Service Concessions	<u>(344,220)</u>	-
Net Pension Liabilities (and related deferred inflows and outflows of resources) do not consume current financial resources are not reported in governmental funds:		
Net Pension Liability	(12,968,145)	
Pension Related Deferred Outflows	<u>2,903,814</u>	<u>(10,064,331)</u>
TOTAL NET POSITION - GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES		<u><u>\$ 106,647,921</u></u>

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES –  
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	General Fund	Capital Projects	Debt Service Fund
<b>REVENUES</b>			
Taxes	\$ 19,450,338	\$ -	\$ 6,149,844
Permits and Fees	2,367,929	-	-
Service Fees	2,107,844	-	-
Fines and Fees	1,021,965	-	-
Intergovernmental	307,809	89,264	-
Investment Earnings	128,158	123,920	47,758
Miscellaneous	603,477	745,050	100,000
<b>TOTAL REVENUES</b>	<b>25,987,520</b>	<b>958,234</b>	<b>6,297,602</b>
<b>EXPENDITURES</b>			
<i>Current:</i>			
General Government	5,171,635	-	-
Public Safety	11,846,184	-	-
Public Environment	1,128,979	-	-
Parks and Recreation	1,682,955	-	-
Cultural	901,992	-	-
Health	672,934	-	-
Administration	2,395,926	-	-
<i>Capital Outlay</i>	644,773	4,757,930	-
<i>Debt Service:</i>			
Principal	33,174	-	4,440,000
Interest and Fiscal Charges	36,513	-	2,077,166
Bond Issue Costs	-	211,330	2,950
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES</b>	<b>24,515,065</b>	<b>4,969,260</b>	<b>6,520,116</b>
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	1,472,455	(4,011,026)	(222,514)
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES)</b>			
Proceeds From Issuance of Debt	-	8,870,000	-
Premiums from Issuance of Debt	-	381,931	-
Transfers In	68,385	9,399	361,019
Transfers Out	-	-	-
<b>TOTAL OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES)</b>	<b>68,385</b>	<b>9,261,330</b>	<b>361,019</b>
<b>Net Change in Fund Balance</b>	<b>1,540,840</b>	<b>5,250,304</b>	<b>138,505</b>
Fund Balances at Beginning of Year	11,428,778	11,665,693	1,311,577
Fund Balances at End of Year	<b>\$ 12,969,618</b>	<b>\$ 16,915,997</b>	<b>\$ 1,450,082</b>

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.



Economic Development Corporation	Other Nonmajor Governmental Funds	Total Governmental Funds
\$ 3,620,930	\$ 499,466	\$ 29,720,578
-	172,116	2,540,045
-	24,455	2,132,299
-	195,656	1,217,621
-	-	397,073
125,684	22,897	448,417
-	209	1,448,736
<u>3,746,614</u>	<u>914,799</u>	<u>37,904,769</u>
92,829	130,454	5,394,918
-	24,452	11,870,636
-	-	1,128,979
-	202,960	1,885,915
-	19,878	921,870
-	-	672,934
450,524	66,405	2,912,855
-	89,493	5,492,196
-	-	4,473,174
-	-	2,113,679
-	-	214,280
<u>543,353</u>	<u>533,642</u>	<u>37,081,436</u>
<u>3,203,261</u>	<u>381,157</u>	<u>823,333</u>
-	-	8,870,000
-	-	381,931
-	-	438,803
<u>(361,019)</u>	<u>(68,385)</u>	<u>(429,404)</u>
<u>(361,019)</u>	<u>(68,385)</u>	<u>9,261,330</u>
2,842,242	312,772	10,084,663
<u>12,227,179</u>	<u>2,381,052</u>	<u>39,014,279</u>
<u>\$ 15,069,421</u>	<u>\$ 2,693,824</u>	<u>\$ 49,098,942</u>



CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
RECONCILIATION OF THE STATEMENT OF REVENUES,  
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NET CHANGE IN FUND BALANCES - GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS \$ 10,084,663

Amounts reported for governmental activities in the Statement of Activities are different because:

Governmental funds report capital outlays as expenditures. However, in the statement of activities the cost of those assets is allocated over their estimated useful lives and reported as depreciation expense. In addition, capital assets contributed to governmental activities are not recorded on the fund statements.

Capital Outlay	4,821,788	
Capital Contributions	10,042,931	
Depreciation Expense	<u>(5,734,405)</u>	9,130,314

Proceeds from capital asset dispositions produce current financial resources in the fund statements, while the net gain (loss) is recognized in the Statement of Activities. This is net book value of capital assets disposed. (250,551)

Revenues in the Statement of Activities that do not provide current financial resources are not reported as revenues in the funds. (305,723)

The issuance of long-term debt (e.g. bonds, leases) provides current financial resources to governmental funds, which the repayment of the principal of long-term debt consumes the current financial resources of governmental funds. Neither transaction, however, has any affect on net position. This amount is the net effect of these differences in the treatment of long-term debt and related items.

Proceeds from the Issuance of Debt	(8,870,000)	
Premiums Received from the Issuance of Debt	(381,931)	
Principal Repayments	4,473,174	
Amortization of Premiums, Discounts, Losses	<u>27,898</u>	(4,750,859)

Governmental funds report required contributions to employee pensions as expenditures. However, in the Statement of Activities the cost of the pension is recorded based on the actuarially determined cost of the plan. This is the amount that actuarially determined pension expense exceeded contributions. (584,062)

Some expenses reported in the Statement of Activities do not require the use of current financial resources and, therefore, are not reported as expenditures in governmental funds:

Compensated Absences	(47,306)	
Net Other Postemployment Benefits	(100,056)	
Accrued Interest	<u>(92,169)</u>	<u>(239,531)</u>

CHANGE IN NET POSITION - GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES \$ 13,084,251

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION - PROPRIETARY FUNDS  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Business-Type Activities - Enterprise Funds			Governmental Activities
	Water and Sewer System	Schertz EMS	Total	Internal Service Fund
<b>ASSETS</b>				
<i>Current Assets:</i>				
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 2,353,733	\$ -	\$ 2,353,733	\$ -
Investments	9,725,719	551,826	10,277,545	-
Accounts Receivable, Net of Allowance:				
Customer Accounts	2,719,495	3,092,705	5,812,200	-
Due from Other Funds	116,040	-	116,040	-
Accrued Interest	6,324	-	6,324	-
Inventory	51,790	81,640	133,430	-
<i>Total Current Assets</i>	<u>14,973,101</u>	<u>3,726,171</u>	<u>18,699,272</u>	<u>-</u>
<i>Noncurrent Assets:</i>				
Restricted Assets:				
Cash and Cash Equivalents	1,444,226	-	1,444,226	-
Investments	14,246,632	90,028	14,336,660	-
Capital Assets:				
Land	1,354,138	-	1,354,138	-
Water Rights	70,245	-	70,245	-
Buildings and Improvements	4,653,501	6,500	4,660,001	-
Machinery, Equipment, and Vehicles	2,814,438	2,198,639	5,013,077	-
Infrastructure	92,807,350	-	92,807,350	-
Construction in Progress	2,907,404	-	2,907,404	-
Less: Accumulated Depreciation	(29,835,794)	(1,397,623)	(31,233,417)	-
<i>Total Noncurrent Assets</i>	<u>90,462,140</u>	<u>897,544</u>	<u>91,359,684</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>105,435,241</u>	<u>4,623,715</u>	<u>110,058,956</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>				
Deferred Loss on Refunding	89,998	-	89,998	-
Deferred Pension Related Outflows	359,249	548,412	907,661	-
<b>TOTAL DEFERRED OUTFLOWS</b>	<u>\$ 449,247</u>	<u>\$ 548,412</u>	<u>\$ 997,659</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION - PROPRIETARY FUNDS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Business-Type Activities - Enterprise Funds			Governmental
	Water and Sewer System	Schertz EMS	Total	Internal Service Fund
<b>LIABILITIES</b>				
<i>Current Liabilities:</i>				
Accounts Payable	\$ 2,037,480	\$ 56,756	\$ 2,094,236	\$ -
Accrued Liabilities	45,370	130,790	176,160	-
Customer Deposits	590,618	-	590,618	-
Accrued Interest Payable	55,618	7,953	63,571	-
Due to Other Funds	-	175,084	175,084	-
Unearned Revenue	431,088	10	431,098	-
Current Portion of Compensated Absences	19,212	42,913	62,125	-
Current Portion of Long-Term Debt	1,282,556	329,541	1,612,097	-
<i>Total Current Liabilities</i>	4,461,942	743,047	5,204,989	-
<i>Noncurrent Liabilities:</i>				
Compensated Absences	76,847	171,653	248,500	-
Net Other Post-Employment Benefit Payable	48,451	100,370	148,821	-
Net Pension Liability	1,603,324	2,454,626	4,057,950	-
Long-Term Debt (Net of Current Portion)	9,441,450	812,579	10,254,029	-
<i>Total Noncurrent Liabilities</i>	11,170,072	3,539,228	14,709,300	-
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>	15,632,014	4,282,275	19,914,289	-
<b>NET POSITION</b>				
Net Investment in Capital Assets	70,065,611	295,424	70,361,035	-
Unrestricted	20,186,863	594,428	20,781,291	-
<b>TOTAL NET POSITION</b>	\$ 90,252,474	\$ 889,852	\$ 91,142,326	\$ -

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN FUND NET POSITION  
PROPRIETARY FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Business-Type Activities - Enterprise Funds			Governmental
	Water and Sewer System	Schertz EMS	Total	Internal Service Fund
<b>OPERATING REVENUES</b>				
Fees Charged to Users	\$ 25,079,280	\$ 6,366,894	\$ 31,446,174	\$ -
Charges for Premiums	-	-	-	2,690,926
Other Charges	311,433	-	311,433	-
<b>TOTAL OPERATING REVENUES</b>	<u>25,390,713</u>	<u>6,366,894</u>	<u>31,757,607</u>	<u>2,690,926</u>
<b>OPERATING EXPENSES</b>				
Personnel Services	1,861,475	3,976,190	5,837,665	2,690,926
Contribution to Joint Ventures	2,542,314	-	2,542,314	-
Water Purchase	2,918,214	-	2,918,214	-
Garbage Contractor	4,342,077	-	4,342,077	-
Sewage Treatment	3,763,487	-	3,763,487	-
General and Administrative	2,454,165	541,006	2,995,171	-
Contractual Services	356,891	651,726	1,008,617	-
Supplies and Maintenance	458,539	480,692	939,231	-
Depreciation	2,282,145	339,171	2,621,316	-
<b>TOTAL OPERATING EXPENSES</b>	<u>20,979,307</u>	<u>5,988,785</u>	<u>26,968,092</u>	<u>2,690,926</u>
<b>OPERATING INCOME (LOSS)</b>	<u>4,411,406</u>	<u>378,109</u>	<u>4,789,515</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>NONOPERATING REVENUES (EXPENSES)</b>				
Investment Earnings	207,817	3,649	211,466	-
Lease Income	232,754	-	232,754	-
Miscellaneous	122,373	120,606	242,979	-
Interest Expense	(368,390)	(17,393)	(385,783)	-
Amortization	1,619	-	1,619	-
<b>TOTAL NONOPERATING REVENUES (EXPENSES)</b>	<u>196,173</u>	<u>106,862</u>	<u>303,035</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>INCOME BEFORE CONTRIBUTIONS AND TRANSFERS</b>	4,607,579	484,971	5,092,550	-
Transfers In (Out)	-	(9,399)	(9,399)	-
Capital Contributions	6,111,474	-	6,111,474	-
<b>CHANGE IN NET POSITION</b>	10,719,053	475,572	11,194,625	-
<b>NET POSITION AT BEGINNING OF YEAR</b>	<u>79,533,421</u>	<u>414,280</u>	<u>79,947,701</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>NET POSITION AT END OF YEAR</b>	<u>\$ 90,252,474</u>	<u>\$ 889,852</u>	<u>\$ 91,142,326</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS - PROPRIETARY FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Business-Type Activities - Enterprise Funds			Governmental
	Water and Sewer System	Schertz EMS	Total	Internal Service Fund
<b>Cash Flows From Operating Activities:</b>				
Cash Received From Customers and Users	\$ 25,048,982	\$ 5,591,596	\$ 30,640,578	\$ -
Cash Received from Interfund Services	-	-	-	2,690,926
Cash Paid to Employees for Services	(1,836,377)	(3,810,177)	(5,646,554)	(2,690,926)
Cash Paid to Supplier for Goods & Services	(16,460,515)	(1,704,734)	(18,165,249)	-
<b>Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities</b>	<u>6,752,090</u>	<u>76,685</u>	<u>6,828,775</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>Cash Flows From Noncapital Financing Activities:</b>				
Cash Advances From/(To) Other Funds	-	165,685	165,685	-
<b>Net Cash Provided (Used) by Noncapital Financing Activities</b>	<u>-</u>	<u>165,685</u>	<u>165,685</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>Cash Flows From Capital and Related Financing Activities:</b>				
Acquisition and Construction of Capital Assets	(1,030,767)	(34,510)	(1,065,277)	-
Interest Paid on Long-Term Debt	(365,973)	(11,336)	(377,309)	-
Principal Paid on Long-Term Debt	(1,332,556)	(229,541)	(1,562,097)	-
<b>Net Cash Provided (Used) by Capital and Related Financing Activities</b>	<u>(2,729,296)</u>	<u>(275,387)</u>	<u>(3,004,683)</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>Cash Flows From Investing Activities:</b>				
Purchase of Investments	(4,904,577)	(552,751)	(5,457,328)	-
Premium from Issuance of Debt	-	19,399	19,399	-
Proceeds from Issuance of Debt	-	540,000	540,000	-
Payments from Leases	232,754	-	232,754	-
Interest and Investment Earnings	207,817	3,649	211,466	-
<b>Net Cash Provided (Used) by Investing Activities</b>	<u>(4,464,006)</u>	<u>10,297</u>	<u>(4,453,709)</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>Net Increase (Decrease) in Cash and Cash Equivalents</b>	<u>(441,212)</u>	<u>(22,720)</u>	<u>(463,932)</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>Cash and Cash Equivalents at Beginning of Year:</b>				
Cash and Cash Equivalents	1,779,941	22,720	1,802,661	-
Restricted Cash and Cash Equivalents	2,459,230	-	2,459,230	-
	<u>4,239,171</u>	<u>22,720</u>	<u>4,261,891</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>Cash and Cash Equivalents at End of Year:</b>				
Cash and Cash Equivalents	2,353,733	-	2,353,733	-
Restricted Cash and Cash Equivalents	1,444,226	-	1,444,226	-
	<u>\$ 3,797,959</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 3,797,959</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS - PROPRIETARY FUNDS (CONTINUED)  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

	Business-Type Activities - Enterprise Funds			Governmental
	Water and Sewer System	Schertz EMS	Total	Activities Internal Service Fund
<b>Reconciliation of Operating Income to Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities:</b>				
Operating Income	\$ 4,411,406	\$ 378,109	\$ 4,789,515	\$ -
Revenues from Other Sources	122,373	120,606	242,979	-
Adjustments to Reconcile Operating Income (Loss) to Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities:				
Depreciation	2,282,145	339,171	2,621,316	-
Decrease (Increase) in Assets:				
Accounts Receivable (net)	(494,473)	(895,886)	(1,390,359)	-
Prepaid Expenses	17,189	19,327	36,516	-
Inventory	9,928	(47)	9,881	-
Deferred Pension Outflows	25,794	53,434	79,228	-
Increase (Decrease) in Liabilities:				
Accounts Payable	348,055	(50,590)	297,465	-
Accrued Liabilities	(7,659)	11,302	3,643	-
Customer Deposits	20,868	-	20,868	-
Unearned Revenue	9,501	(18)	9,483	-
Compensated Absences	(11,920)	15,727	3,807	-
Net Pension Liability	30,066	62,286	92,352	-
Net Other Post-employment Benefit Payable	(11,183)	23,264	12,081	-
<b>Net Cash Provided (Used) by Operating Activities</b>	<b>\$ 6,752,090</b>	<b>\$ 76,685</b>	<b>\$ 6,828,775</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
Noncash Capital and Related Financing Transactions:				
Developer Contributions of Capital Assets	\$ 6,111,474	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -

See accompanying notes to basic financial statements.



NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 1 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

The City of Schertz is a municipal corporation governed by an elected mayor and five-member council. The financial statements of the City have been prepared in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) as applied to government units. The Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) is the accepted standard setting body for establishing governmental accounting and financial reporting principles. The more significant of the City's accounting policies are described below:

A. Reporting Entity

**Component Units** - As required by generally accepted accounting principles, these financial statements present the government and its component units, entities for which the government is considered to be financially accountable. Blended component units, although legally separate entities, are, in substance, part of the government's operations; thus, data from these units are be combined with data of the primary government. Discretely presented component units, on the other hand, are reported in a separate column in the government-wide financial statements to emphasize it is legally separate from the government. The City reports the following blended component units:

1. Schertz Economic Development Corporation - The Corporation was organized for the purpose of promoting economic development in order to eliminate unemployment and underemployment and to promote and encourage employment and public welfare of, for, and on behalf of the City. The board of directors consists of seven (7) members appointed by the city council. The City is financially accountable for the Corporation because the city council approves the Corporation's budget. For financial reporting purposes, the SEDC is reported as if it were part of the City's operations because its purpose is to benefit the citizens of the City. Complete financial statements for the Schertz Economic Development Corporation may be obtained from City Hall.
2. Parks and Recreation Foundation – The Foundation was organized to improve and expand the community parks, trails, venues, and recreational programs providing fun leisure and healthy activities. The Foundation's governing board is comprised of Schertz residents and employees of the City, the accounting records are maintained by the finance department, cash is held by the City and the City provides financing for the Foundation. In addition, the City includes the Foundation as part of the City budget process. The Foundation qualifies as a blended component unit as it provides services entirely to the City and its citizens. The Foundation was dissolved by the City in the current year.

**Joint Ventures** - A joint venture is a legally separate entity that results from a contractual arrangement and that is owned, operated, or governed by two or more participating governments. The following entities meet the criteria as joint ventures. Separate financial statements for these entities may be obtained at City Hall.

1. Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation - is a public, nonprofit corporation organized to aid, assist, and act on behalf of the cities of Schertz and Seguin in acquiring, constructing, maintaining, and operating a water utility system. The participating governments have an ongoing financial responsibility to fund the operation of the corporation through either purchase of services or by subsidizing the operations.
2. Cibolo Valley Local Government Corporation – is a public, nonprofit corporation organized July 28, 2011 to aid, assist, and act on behalf of the cities of Cibolo, Converse and Schertz in acquiring, constructing, maintaining, and operating a water utility system. The participating governments have an ongoing financial responsibility to fund the operation of the corporation through either purchase of services or by subsidizing the operations.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 1 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

3. Cibolo Creek Municipal Authority (CCMA) – was created in 1971 and provides regional wastewater services to the area northeast of San Antonio. The City and CCMC entered into a joint project to develop a new treatment facility that will currently only serve the City. The project will have excess capacity to serve other users in the future. The City is solely responsible for funding the project until other users need capacity.

B. Government-Wide and Fund Financial Statements

The government-wide financial statements (i.e., the statement of net position and the statement of activities) report information on all of the activities of the primary government and its component units. For the most part, the effect of interfund activity has been removed from these statements. Governmental activities, which normally are supported by taxes and intergovernmental revenues, are reported separately from business-type activities, which rely to a significant extent on fees and charges for support.

The statement of activities demonstrates the degree to which the direct expenses of a given function or segment is offset by program revenues. Direct expenses are those that are clearly identifiable with a specific function or segment. Program revenues include 1) charges of customers or applicants who purchase, use, or directly benefit from goods, services, or privileges provided by a given function or segment and 2) grants and contributions that are restricted to meeting the operational or capital requirements of a particular function or segment. Taxes and other items not properly included among program revenues are reported instead as general revenues.

Separate financial statements are provided for governmental funds and proprietary funds. Major individual governmental funds and major individual enterprise funds are reported as separate columns in the fund financial statements.

C. Measurement Focus, Basis of Accounting, and Financial Statement Presentation

The government-wide financial statements are reported using the economic resources measurement focus and the accrual basis of accounting, as are the proprietary fund financial statements. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded when a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of related cash flows. Property taxes are recognized as revenues in the year for which they are levied. Grants and similar items are recognized as revenue as soon as all eligibility requirements imposed by the provider have been met.

Governmental fund financial statements are reported using the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Revenues are recognized as soon as they are both measurable and available. Revenues are considered to be available when they are collectible within the current period or soon thereafter to pay liabilities of the current period. For this purpose, the City considers revenues to be available if they are collected within 60 days of the end of the current fiscal period. Nonexchange revenues that are measurable but not available are recorded as unavailable revenue (a deferred inflow of resources). These revenues are generally property taxes and warrants outstanding. Expenditures generally are recorded when a liability is incurred, as under accrual accounting. However, debt service expenditures, as well as expenditures related to compensated absences and claims and judgments, are recorded only when payment is due.

Exchange revenues (payments for services) received in advance of the service being provided are recorded as unearned revenue.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 1 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

C. Measurement Focus, Basis of Accounting, and Financial Statement Presentation (Continued)

The City reports the following major governmental funds:

**The General Fund** is the City's primary operating fund which accounts for all financial resources of the general government, except those required to be accounted for in another fund.

**The Debt Service Fund** accounts for the resources accumulated and payments made for principal and interest on long-term general obligation debt of governmental funds.

**The Capital Projects Fund** accounts for financial resources to be used for the acquisition and construction of major capital facilities and is principally financed by the sale of bonds or certificates of obligation and grants.

**Economic Development Corporation** collects sales taxes to support business development and expansion within the City.

**Nonmajor Funds** include Special Revenue funds (other than major projects and grants).

The government reports the following major proprietary funds:

**The Water and Sewer System Fund** accounts for the water and sewer services provided to the citizens through user charges.

**The EMS Fund** accounts for the emergency medical services provided to the citizens of the City and other participating governments through user charges.

**Internal Service Fund** accounts for the City's group medical insurance program.

As a general rule the effect of interfund activity has been eliminated from the government-wide financial statements. Exceptions to this are charges between the City's general government function and various other functions of the City. Eliminations of these charges would distort the direct costs and program revenues reported for the various functions concerned.

Amounts reported as program revenues include 1) charges to customers or applications for goods, services, or privileges provided, 2) operating grants and contributions, and 3) capital grants and contributions. General revenues include all taxes and investment earnings.

Proprietary funds distinguish operating revenues and expenses from nonoperating items. Operating revenues and expenses generally result from providing services and producing and delivering goods in connection with a proprietary fund's principal ongoing operations. The principal operating revenues of the water and sewer enterprise fund and the EMS enterprise fund are charges to customers for sales and services. Operating expenses for enterprise funds include the cost of sales and services, administrative expenses, and depreciation on capital assets. All revenues and expenses not meeting this definition are reported as nonoperating revenues and expenses.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 1 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

C. Measurement Focus, Basis of Accounting, and Financial Statement Presentation (Continued)

When both restricted and unrestricted resources are available for use, it is the City's policy to use restricted resources first, then unrestricted resources as they are needed.

D. Cash and Cash Equivalents

The City's cash and cash equivalents are considered to be cash on hand and demand deposits. Cash is reported as restricted when it has restrictions on its use narrower than the purpose of the fund in which it is reported. This can result in differences in presentation between fund statements and government-wide statements.

E. Investments

The City is authorized to invest in (1) obligations of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities; (2) direct obligations of the State of Texas or its agencies; (3) other obligations, the principal of and interest on which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the State of Texas or the United States; (4) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state having been rated of not less than "AA" or its equivalent; (5) certificates of deposit issued by state and national banks domiciled in Texas that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) or its successor, or secured by obligations mentioned above; and (6) fully collateralized direct repurchase agreements having a defined termination date. In addition, the City is authorized to invest in local government investment pools. The investment pools operate in accordance with appropriate state laws and regulations and have regulatory oversight from the Texas Public Funds Investment Act Sec. 2256.0016. The fair value of the City's position in each pool is the same as the fair value of the pool shares.

F. Receivables and Payables

Activities between the funds that are representative of interfund loans outstanding at the end of the fiscal year are referred to as due to/from other funds. Any residual balances outstanding between the governmental activities and business-type activities are reported in the government-wide financial statements as "internal balances".

Accounts receivable are reported net of allowances for uncollectible accounts. The allowance account represents management's estimate of uncollectible accounts based upon experience and historical trends.

Property taxes for the City are levied each October 1 on the taxable value as of the preceding January 1, the date a lien attaches, for all taxable real and personal property located in the City. Taxes are due by January 31 following the October 1 assessment date and become delinquent on February 1, at which time they begin accruing penalty and interest. The enforceable legal claim date for property taxes is the assessment date; therefore, the City did not record a receivable for accrual of future taxes at year end. Accordingly, no current taxes receivable are reported. Delinquent taxes have been reported in the financial statements net of the allowance for uncollectible taxes. Tax revenues are recognized as they become available. Accordingly, an amount equal to taxes not yet available has been reported as unavailable revenue (a deferred inflow of resources) at the government fund level.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 1 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

G. Inventories and Prepaid Items

All inventories are valued at cost using the first-in/first-out (FIFO) method. Inventories of governmental funds are recorded as expenditures when consumed rather than when purchased.

Certain payments to vendors reflect costs applicable to future accounting periods and are recorded as prepaid items in both governmental-wide and fund financial statements and in the fund financial statements are offset by a nonspendable fund balance which indicates they do not represent “available spendable resources”.

H. Restricted Assets

Certain proceeds from bonds, resources set aside for their repayment, and other restrictive agreements are classified as restricted assets on the balance sheet because they are maintained in separate bank accounts and their use is limited by applicable bond covenants and/or contractual arrangements.

I. Capital Assets

Capital assets, which include land, buildings and improvements, machinery, equipment, vehicles, and infrastructure assets (i.e., roads, bridges, sidewalks, and similar items), are reported in the applicable governmental or business-type activities columns in the government-wide financial statements. Capital assets are defined by the City as assets with an initial, individual cost of more than \$5,000 and an estimated useful life in excess of one year. When capital assets are purchased, they are capitalized and depreciated in the government-wide financial statements and the proprietary fund statements. Capital assets are recorded as expenditures of the current period in the governmental fund financial statements.

Capital assets are valued at cost where historical records are available and at an estimated cost where no records exist. Donated capital assets, donated works of art and similar items received as part of a service concession arrangement are reported at acquisition value. All other donated capital assets are valued at their estimated fair market value at the date of donation.

The costs of normal maintenance and repairs that do not add to the value of the asset or materially extend asset lives are not capitalized. Improvements to capital assets that materially extend the life of the asset or add to the value are capitalized. Major outlays for capital assets and improvements are capitalized as projects are constructed. Interest incurred during construction will not be capitalized in the governmental activities on the government-wide financial statements; however capitalization of interest is required for business-type activities. There was no capitalized interest during the current fiscal year.

Capital assets are depreciated over their useful lives on a straight-line basis as follows:

Assets	Useful Lives (Years)
Buildings and Improvements	10 - 50
Machinery, Equipment, and Vehicles	2 - 20
Infrastructure	15 - 30

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 1 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

J. Deferred Inflows/Outflows of Resources

A deferred outflow of resources is a consumption of net position by the government that is applicable to a future reporting period while a deferred inflow of resources is an acquisition of net position. These items are presented in separate sections following assets (deferred outflows) or liabilities (deferred inflows) on the statement of net position.

K. Compensated Absences

It is the City's policy to permit employees to accumulate earned but unused vacation and compensatory time benefits. There is no liability for unpaid accumulated sick leave since the City does not have a policy to pay any amounts when employees separate from service with the City. All vacation and compensatory time pay is accrued when incurred in the government-wide and proprietary fund financial statements. A liability for these amounts is reported in governmental funds only if they have matured, for example, as a result of employee resignations and retirements.

L. Pensions

The net pension liability, deferred inflows, and outflows of resources related to pensions, and pension expense, information about the fiduciary net position of the Texas Municipal Retirement System (TMRS), and additions to and deductions from TMRS's fiduciary net position have been determined on the same basis as they are reported by TMRS. For this purpose, benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

M. Long-Term Obligations

In the government-wide financial statements, and proprietary fund types in the fund financial statements, long-term debt and other long-term obligations are reported as liabilities in the applicable governmental activities, business-type activities, or proprietary fund type statement of net position. Bond premiums, discounts, and losses on defeasance are amortized over the life of the bonds using the effective interest method. Bonds payable are reported net of the applicable bond premium or discount. Losses on defeasance are reported as deferred outflows of resources. Bond issuance costs are expensed as incurred.

In the fund financial statements, governmental fund types recognize bond premiums and discounts, as well as bond issuance costs, during the current period. The face amount of debt issued is reported as other financing sources. Premiums received on debt issuances are reported as other financing sources while discounts on debt issuances are reported as other financing uses. Issuance costs, whether or not withheld from the actual debt proceeds received, are reported as debt service expenditures.

N. Fund Equity

Fund balances in governmental funds are classified as follows:

Nonspendable – Represents amounts that cannot be spent because they are either not in spendable form (such as inventory or prepaid items) or legally required to remain intact.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 1 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (Continued)

N. Fund Equity (Continued)

Restricted – Represents amounts that are constrained by external parties, constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.

Committed – Represents amounts that can only be used for a specific purpose because of a formal action by the government’s highest level of decision making authority: an ordinance adopted by City Council prior to the end of the fiscal year. Once adopted, the limitation imposed by the ordinance remains in place until a similar action is taken (the adoption of another ordinance) to remove or revise the limitation.

Assigned – Represents amounts which the City intends to use for a specific purpose but do not meet the criteria of restricted or committed. The City Council may make assignments through formal documentation in the minutes. The City Council authorized (by way of policy) the City Manager to also make assignments. The City Manager’s assignments do not require formal action; however, the City Manager has not assigned any funds at this time.

Unassigned – Represents the residual balance that may be spent on any other purpose of the City.

When an expenditure is incurred for a purpose in which multiple classifications are available, the City considers restricted balances spent first, committed second, and assigned third.

O. Net Position

Net position represents the difference between assets plus deferred outflows of resources less liabilities and deferred inflows of resources. Net investment in capital assets consists of capital assets, net of accumulated depreciation, reduced by the outstanding balances of any borrowing used for the acquisition, construction or improvements of those assets, and adding back unspent proceeds. Net assets are reported as restricted when there are limitations imposed by creditors, grantors, or laws or regulations of other governments.

P. Estimates

The preparation of financial statements, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosures of contingent liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expenses during the reporting period. Actual amounts could differ from those estimates.

Q. Budgetary Information

Annual budgets are adopted on a basis consistent with generally accepted accounting principles for all governmental funds except the library grant special revenue fund, police department forfeiture special revenue fund and the capital projects fund, which adopts project-length budgets.

R. Reclassifications

Certain reclassifications have been made in the presentation of the September 30, 2017 financial statements. All comparative information for prior periods has been reclassified to match the new presentation. The changes in presentation had no impact on the changes in net position or fund balance.



CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 2 - CASH, CASH EQUIVALENTS AND INVESTMENTS

The City's operating deposits are held at one institution. The institution provides a combination of pledged collateral and FDIC insurance to completely collateralize the City's deposits.

As of September 30, 2017, the City had the following pooled investment funds:

<u>Investment Type</u>	<u>Fair Value</u>	<u>Weighted Average Maturity in Days</u>
LOGIC	\$ 17,541,325	40
Lone Star Investment Pool	21,322,949	47
Texas CLASS	21,623,633	79
Schertz Bank & Trust - Certificates of Deposit	3,153,510	180
Capital One - U.S. Agency Securities	3,133,521	676
Total	<u>\$ 66,774,938</u>	<u>91</u>

*Interest Rate Risk.* As a means of limiting its exposure to fair value losses arising from rising interest rates, the City's investment policy limits the City's investment portfolio to highly liquid investments to meet unanticipated cash requirements, and/or to redeploy cash into other investments expected to outperform current holdings.

*Credit Risk.* State law limits investments in certificates of deposit to guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or its successor or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund, or its successor and investment pools continuously rated no lower than AAA or an equivalent rating by at least one nationally recognized rating service. The City's investment policy does not further limit its investment choices. As of September 30, 2017, the City's investments in the pooled investment funds were rated AAAM by Standard & Poor's. The City has also invested in debt securities provided by the Federal Home Loan Bank, Federal National Mortgage Association, Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation, Federal Farm Credit Banks, and U.S Treasury Notes. As of September 30, 2017, the City's investments in debt securities were rated BBB+ by Standard & Poor's.

*Custodial Credit Risk - Deposits.* In the case of deposits, this is the risk that in the event of a bank failure, the government's deposits may not be returned. As of September 30, 2017, the City's cash and cash equivalents (including certificates of deposit, and component unit holdings) were fully collateralized by the City's depository by a combination of pledged collateral and FDIC insurance. All collateral is held in the City's name.

*Custodial Credit Risk - Investments.* For an investment, this is the risk that, in the event of the failure of the counterparty, the government will not be able to recover the value of its investment or collateral securities that are in the possession of an outside party. All of the government securities owned by the City are held by its agent in the City's name.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 3 - FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENT

The City categorizes its fair value measurements within the fair value hierarchy established by generally accepted accounting principles. The hierarchy is based on the valuation inputs used to measure the fair value of the asset. Level 1 inputs are quoted prices in active markets for identical assets; Level 2 inputs are significant other observable inputs; Level 3 inputs are significant unobservable inputs.

As of September 30, 2017, the City's recurring fair value measurement assets consist of Fixed Income U.S. Agency Securities. These investments are valued using prices quoted in active markets for those securities.

The following table summarizes the assets for which fair values are determined on a recurring basis as of September 30, 2017:

<u>Investment Type</u>	Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)	Fair Value
Fixed Income Securities	\$ 3,133,521	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 3,133,521
Municipal Investment Pools	60,487,907	-	-	60,487,907
 Total	 <u>\$ 63,621,428</u>	 <u>\$ -</u>	 <u>\$ -</u>	 <u>\$ 63,621,428</u>

NOTE 4 - PROPERTY TAX

Taxes are levied on and payable as of October 1. The City has contracted with the Guadalupe County Tax Assessor-Collector to collect taxes on its behalf. Current taxes become delinquent February 1. Current year delinquent taxes not paid by July 1 are turned over to attorneys for collection action. The total taxable value as of October 1, 2016, upon which the fiscal 2017 levy was based, was \$3,647,504,903 (i.e., market value less exemptions). The estimated market value was \$4,296,677,844 making the taxable value 85% of the estimated market value.

The City is permitted by the Constitution of the State of Texas to levy taxes up to \$2.50 per \$100 of taxable assessed valuation for all governmental purposes. Pursuant to a decision of the Attorney General of the State of Texas, up to \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation may be used for the payment of long-term debt. The combined tax rate to finance general governmental services, including the payment of principal and interest on long-term debt for the year ended September 30, 2017, was \$0.4911 per \$100 of assessed value, which means that the City has a tax margin of \$2.0089 for each \$100 value and could increase its annual tax levy by approximately \$73,274,726 based upon the present assessed valuation before the limit is reached.

However, the City may not adopt a tax rate that exceeds the tax rate calculated in accordance with the Texas Property Tax Code without holding a public hearing. The Property Tax Code subjects an increase in the effective tax rate to a referendum election, if petitioned by registered voters, when the effective tax rate increase is more than eight percent (8%) of the previous year's effective tax rate.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 4 - PROPERTY TAX (Continued)

Property taxes are recorded as receivables and unearned revenues at the time the taxes are assessed. In governmental funds, revenues are recognized as the related ad valorem taxes are collected. Additional amounts estimated to be collectible in the time to be a resource for payment of obligations incurred during the fiscal year and therefore susceptible to accrual in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles have been recognized as revenue. In the government-wide financial statements, the entire levy is recognized as revenue, net of estimated uncollectible amounts (if any), at the levy date.

NOTE 5 - RECEIVABLES

Receivables as September 30, 2017 for the government's individual major funds and nonmajor funds in the aggregate, including the applicable allowances for uncollectible accounts, are as follows:

	Governmental Funds			Proprietary Funds		
	General	Economic Development	Debt Service	Nonmajor Funds	Water and Sewer Fund	Schertz EMS
<i>Receivables:</i>						
Property Taxes	\$ 158,116	\$ -	\$ 87,819	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Sales Taxes	1,330,632	665,316	-	-	-	-
Occupancy Taxes	-	-	-	33,548	-	-
Franchise Taxes	491,039	-	-	-	-	-
Customers	116,209	-	-	-	2,813,969	23,335,745
Court Fines	3,836,423	-	-	-	-	-
Grants	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other	-	8,448	-	-	-	51,284
Gross Receivables	5,932,419	673,764	87,819	33,548	2,813,969	23,387,029
Less: Allowance for Uncollectibles	2,284,486	-	5,269	-	94,474	20,294,324
Net Total Receivables	<u>\$ 3,647,933</u>	<u>\$ 673,764</u>	<u>\$ 82,550</u>	<u>\$ 33,548</u>	<u>\$ 2,719,495</u>	<u>\$ 3,092,705</u>

Governmental funds report *unavailable revenue* in connection with receivables for revenue that is not considered to be available to liquidate liabilities of the current period. Governmental funds also defer revenue recognition in connection with resources that have been received, but not yet earned. At the end of the current fiscal year, the various components of *unearned/ unavailable revenue* and *unavailable revenue* reported in the governmental funds were as follows:

	Unavailable
<i>General Fund</i>	
Delinquent Property Taxes Receivable	\$ 148,630
Court Fines	1,561,424
<i>Total General Fund</i>	<u>1,710,054</u>
<i>Debt Service Fund</i>	
Delinquent Property Taxes Receivable	82,550
<i>Total Debt Service Fund</i>	<u>82,550</u>
<i>Total Governmental Funds</i>	<u>\$ 1,792,604</u>

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 6 - INTERFUND BALANCES AND TRANSFERS

The composition of interfund balances as of September 30, 2017 is as follows:

Due From	Due To	Amount	Purpose
Capital Projects Fund	Water & Sewer	\$ 116,040	Structured funding for Waterline Project
EMS	General	175,084	Short-term pooled cash loan

The following schedule briefly summarizes the City's transfer activity for the year ending September 30, 2017:

Transfer From	Transfer To	Amount	Purpose
Nonmajor Governmental	General	\$ 68,385	Supplement DEA expenditures
EMS	Capital Projects	9,399	Supplement capital purchases
Economic Development	Debt Service	361,019	Pledge in support of debt service

NOTE 7 - CAPITAL ASSETS

Capital asset activity for the year ended September 30, 2017 was as follows:

	Beginning Balance	Increases	Deletions	Transfers	Ending Balance
<b>Governmental Activities:</b>					
<i>Capital Assets, Not Being Depreciated:</i>					
Land	\$ 7,499,108	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 7,499,108
Construction in Progress	9,832,153	4,858,158	-	(1,057,797)	13,632,514
<i>Total Capital Assets Not Being Depreciated</i>	<u>17,331,261</u>	<u>4,858,158</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(1,057,797)</u>	<u>21,131,622</u>
<i>Capital Assets, Being Depreciated:</i>					
Buildings and Improvements	43,607,412	-	-	70,535	43,677,947
Machinery, Equipment, and Vehicles	9,282,067	706,131	(628,445)	987,262	10,347,015
Streets and Infrastructure	100,003,048	9,300,430	-	-	109,303,478
<i>Total Capital Assets Being Depreciated</i>	<u>152,892,527</u>	<u>10,006,561</u>	<u>(628,445)</u>	<u>1,057,797</u>	<u>163,328,440</u>
<i>Accumulated Depreciation:</i>					
Buildings and Improvements	(10,743,693)	(1,536,428)	-	-	(12,280,121)
Machinery, Equipment, and Vehicles	(5,257,401)	(934,052)	377,894	-	(5,813,559)
Streets and Infrastructure	(29,113,036)	(3,263,925)	-	-	(32,376,961)
<i>Total Accumulated Depreciation</i>	<u>(45,114,130)</u>	<u>(5,734,405)</u>	<u>377,894</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(50,470,641)</u>
Total Capital Assets Being Depreciated, Net	<u>107,778,397</u>	<u>4,272,156</u>	<u>(250,551)</u>	<u>1,057,797</u>	<u>112,857,799</u>
Governmental Activities Capital Assets, Net	<u>\$ 125,109,658</u>	<u>\$ 9,130,314</u>	<u>\$ (250,551)</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 133,989,421</u>

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 7 - CAPITAL ASSETS (Continued)

Capital asset activity for the year ended September 30, 2017 was as follows:

	Beginning Balance	Increases	Deletions	Transfers	Ending Balance
<b>Business-Type Activities:</b>					
<i>Capital Assets, Not Being Depreciated:</i>					
Land	\$ 1,354,138	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 1,354,138
Water Rights	70,245	-	-	-	70,245
Construction in Progress	2,681,683	1,030,767	-	(805,046)	2,907,404
<i>Total Assets Not Being Depreciated</i>	<u>4,106,066</u>	<u>1,030,767</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(805,046)</u>	<u>4,331,787</u>
<i>Capital Assets, Being Depreciated:</i>					
Buildings and Improvements	4,660,001	-	-	-	4,660,001
Machinery, Equipment, and Vehicles	5,095,324	34,510	(116,757)	-	5,013,077
Infrastructure	85,890,831	6,111,473	-	805,046	92,807,350
<i>Total Capital Assets Being Depreciated</i>	<u>95,646,156</u>	<u>6,145,983</u>	<u>(116,757)</u>	<u>805,046</u>	<u>102,480,428</u>
<i>Accumulated Depreciation:</i>					
Buildings and Improvements	(2,226,657)	(247,349)	-	-	(2,474,006)
Machinery, Equipment, and Vehicles	(2,503,456)	(608,901)	116,757	-	(2,995,600)
Infrastructure	(23,998,745)	(1,765,066)	-	-	(25,763,811)
<i>Total Accumulated Depreciation</i>	<u>(28,728,858)</u>	<u>(2,621,316)</u>	<u>116,757</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(31,233,417)</u>
Total Capital Assets Being Depreciated, Net	<u>66,917,298</u>	<u>3,524,667</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>805,046</u>	<u>71,247,011</u>
Business-Type Activities Capital Assets, Net	<u>\$ 71,023,364</u>	<u>\$ 4,555,434</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 75,578,798</u>

Depreciation expense was charged to functions/programs of the primary government as follows:

<i>Governmental Activities:</i>	
General Government	\$ 671,298
Public Safety	744,936
Public Environment	3,296,787
Parks and Recreation	851,154
Cultural	58,617
Health	84,359
Administration	27,254
<i>Total Depreciation Expense - Governmental Activities</i>	<u>\$ 5,734,405</u>
<i>Business-Type Activities:</i>	
Water and Sewer System	\$ 2,282,145
EMS	339,171
<i>Total Depreciation Expense - Business Type Activities</i>	<u>\$ 2,621,316</u>

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 8 - OPERATING LEASE

The City has agreements with several telecommunication companies to place cellular towers on City water towers. The following schedule represents the future minimum lease payments.

Fiscal Year Ending September 30,	Total
2018	\$ 248,161
2019	260,569
2020	273,597
2021	287,277
2022	301,641
2023-2027	1,740,127
2028-2032	404,227
	\$ 3,515,599

NOTE 9 - CAPITAL LEASE

In 2014, the City entered into two lease agreements qualifying as capital leases for accounting purposes based on a bargain purchase option. Therefore, capital assets and a related capital lease obligation have been recorded at the present value of the future minimum lease payments at the inception date. The assets acquired through capital lease are reported in capital assets with the following accumulated depreciation at September 30, 2017:

	Governmental Activities	Business-type Activities
<i>Assets:</i>		
Equipment	\$ 133,715	\$ 347,705
Less Accumulated Depreciation	(40,115)	(250,218)
Total	\$ 93,600	\$ 97,487

Future minimum lease payments are as follows:

Year Ending September 30,	Governmental Activities	Business-type Activities
2018	\$ 25,505	\$ 70,041
2019	-	23,347
Total Payments	25,505	93,388
Less: Amount Representing Interest	(358)	(667)
Present Value of Minimum Lease Payments	\$ 25,147	\$ 92,721

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 10 - LONG TERM DEBT

The City issues a variety of long-term debt instruments in order to acquire and/or construct major capital facilities and equipment for governmental activities. These instruments include general obligation bonds, certificates of obligation, and capital leases. These debt obligations are secured by primarily future property tax revenues. In some cases, these bonds are also secured by a pledge of net revenues from the utility system, emergency medical services and economic development sales taxes. However, the amount of the formal pledge is generally limited to \$1,000.

In June 2017, the City issued \$3,935,000 in General Obligation Bonds Series 2017 and \$5,475,000 Certificates of Obligations Series 2017 pursuant to the constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, particularly, Subchapter C of Chapter 271 of the Texas Local Government Code, as amended, and in ordinance adopted by the City Council. The certificates constitute direct and general obligations of the City payable from ad valorem taxes levied against all payable property within the City, as well as pledged revenue of up to \$1,000 of the surplus revenues from proprietary funds. The bonds and certificates were issued for the purpose of paying contractual obligations of the City for street improvements, renovations of the Municipal Complex, Senior Center and recreational facilities, purchase of ambulances and fire apparatuses, and the construction of Fire Station No. 2.

A summary of the terms of general obligation bonds and combination of tax and revenue certificates of obligation outstanding at September 30, 2017, follows:

	<u>Issue Amount</u>	<u>Maturity</u>	<u>Rate</u>	<u>Balance</u>
<b><i>Primary Government</i></b>				
General Obligation Bonds				
2007 Series	\$ 6,000,000	2027	4.07%	\$ 3,495,000
2008 Series	9,900,000	2028	4.13%	6,510,000
2009 Series	9,500,000	2033	2.0% - 5.50%	5,465,000
2010 Series, Refunding	2,865,000	2021	2.0% - 4.0%	1,215,000
2011 Series	8,250,000	2036	3.0% - 6.0%	7,070,000
2011A Series, Refunding	6,745,000	2024	2.33%	4,085,000
2012 Series	7,625,000	2032	2.00%	6,120,000
2014 Series, Refunding	8,450,000	2030	2.0%-4.0%	8,200,000
2015 Series, Refunding	4,185,000	2031	2.0%-3.25%	3,655,000
2016 Series	5,880,000	2036	2.0%-4.0%	5,475,000
2017 Series	3,935,000	2037	2.0%-4.0%	3,935,000
Tax Notes				
2013 Notes	835,000	2018	0.7% - 1.7%	170,000
2013A Notes	800,000	2018	1.30%	165,000
2015 Notes	245,000	2021	1.75%	145,000
2015A Notes	1,020,000	2023	1.54%	750,000
Certificates of Obligation				
2016 Series A	2,375,000	2036	2.0% - 4.0%	2,205,000
2016 Series B	1,475,000	2036	3.0%-3.75%	1,420,000
2017 Series	4,935,000	2037	3.0%-3.75%	4,935,000
<b>Total Governmental Long-Term Obligations</b>				<b><u><u>\$ 65,015,000</u></u></b>

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 10 - LONG-TERM DEBT (Continued)

<u><b>Primary Government (Continued)</b></u>	<u>Issue Amount</u>	<u>Maturity</u>	<u>Rate</u>	<u>Balance</u>
General Obligation Bonds				
2011 Series, Refunding	\$ 2,675,000	2021	2.0% - 3.0%	\$ 930,000
2013 Series, Refunding	2,130,000	2025	2.58%	1,600,000
Certificates of Obligation				
2007 Series CIB 1	6,600,000	2026	4.01%	3,880,000
2013 Series	4,965,000	2033	2.0%-4.0%	3,630,000
2017 Series	540,000	2022	3.0%-3.75%	540,000
Tax Notes				
2015 Notes	1,880,000	2021	1.75%	1,065,000
<b>Total Business-Type Long-Term Obligations</b>				<u><u>\$ 11,645,000</u></u>

Changes in long-term debt for the year ending September 30, 2017 are as follows:

	<u>Balance 9/30/2016</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Reductions</u>	<u>Balance 9/30/2017</u>	<u>Due Within One Year</u>
<i>Governmental Activities:</i>					
General Obligation Bonds	\$ 36,385,000	\$ 3,935,000	\$ (2,250,000)	\$ 38,070,000	\$ 2,230,000
Unamortized Premium	661,176	126,800	(36,808)	751,168	43,148
General Obligation Refunding Bonds	18,610,000	-	(1,455,000)	17,155,000	1,510,000
Unamortized Premium	696,096	-	(58,650)	637,446	58,650
Certificates of Obligation	3,850,000	4,935,000	(225,000)	8,560,000	465,000
Unamortized Premium	207,189	255,130	(10,904)	451,415	23,661
Tax Notes	1,740,000	-	(510,000)	1,230,000	515,000
Capital Lease	58,321	-	(33,174)	25,147	25,147
Compensated Absences	1,022,543	251,815	(204,509)	1,069,849	213,970
<b>Total Governmental Activities</b>	<u><u>\$ 63,230,325</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 9,503,745</u></u>	<u><u>\$ (4,784,045)</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 67,950,025</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 5,084,576</u></u>
<i>Business-Type Activities:</i>					
General Obligation Refunding Bonds	\$ 3,010,000	\$ -	\$ (480,000)	\$ 2,530,000	\$ 405,000
Unamortized Premium	4,595	-	(969)	3,626	969
Certificates of Obligation	8,220,000	540,000	(710,000)	8,050,000	830,000
Unamortized Premium	111,966	19,400	(6,587)	124,779	6,587
Tax Notes	1,360,000	-	(295,000)	1,065,000	300,000
Capital Lease	162,262	-	(69,541)	92,721	69,541
Compensated Absences	306,818	65,170	(61,363)	310,625	62,125
<b>Total Business-Type Activities</b>	<u><u>\$ 13,175,641</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 624,570</u></u>	<u><u>\$ (1,623,460)</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 12,176,751</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 1,674,222</u></u>



CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 10 - LONG-TERM DEBT (Continued)

Annual debt service requirements of bonded debt as of September 30, 2017, are as follows:

September 30,	Governmental Activities		
	Principal	Interest	Total
2018	\$ 4,720,000	\$ 2,417,491	\$ 7,137,491
2019	4,210,000	2,201,637	6,411,637
2020	4,355,000	2,038,287	6,393,287
2021	4,415,000	1,860,579	6,275,579
2022	4,270,000	1,697,788	5,967,788
2023-2027	19,625,000	6,369,435	25,994,435
2028-2032	16,165,000	2,974,153	19,139,153
2033-2037	7,255,000	533,363	7,788,363
Total	\$ 65,015,000	\$ 20,092,733	\$ 85,107,733

September 30,	Business-Type Activities		
	Principal	Interest	Total
2018	\$ 1,535,000	\$ 366,416	\$ 1,901,416
2019	1,580,000	322,858	1,902,858
2020	1,620,000	279,902	1,899,902
2021	1,500,000	233,599	1,733,599
2022	875,000	191,146	1,066,146
2023-2027	3,270,000	540,361	3,810,361
2028-2032	1,035,000	152,900	1,187,900
2033-2037	230,000	4,600	234,600
Total	\$ 11,645,000	\$ 2,091,782	\$ 13,736,782

NOTE 11 - RETIREMENT PLAN

**Plan Description**

The City of Schertz participates as one of 872 plans in the nontraditional, joint contributory, hybrid defined benefit pension plan administered by the Texas Municipal Retirement System (TMRS). TMRS is an agency created by the state of Texas and administered in accordance with the TMRS Act, Subtitle G, Title 8, Texas Government Code (the TMRS Act) as an agent multiple-employer retirement system for municipal employees in the State of Texas. The TMRS Act places the general administration and management of the system with a six-member Board of Trustees. Although the Governor, with the advice and consent of the Senate, appoints the Board, TMRS is not fiscally dependent on the State of Texas. TMRS's defined benefit pension plan is a tax-qualified plan under Section 401(a) of the Internal Service Code. TMRS issues a publicly available comprehensive annual financial report (CAFR) that can be obtained at [www.tmrs.com](http://www.tmrs.com).

All eligible employees of the City are required to participate in TMRS.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 11 - RETIREMENT PLAN (Continued)

Texas Municipal Retirement System (Continued)

**Benefits Provided**

TMRS provides retirement, disability, and death benefits. Benefit provisions are adopted by the governing body of the City, within the options available in the state statutes governing TMRS.

At retirement, the benefit is calculated as if the sum of the employee's contributions, with interest, and the City-financed monetary credits with interest were used to purchase an annuity. Members may choose to receive their retirement benefit in one of seven payment options. Members may also choose to receive a portion of their benefit as a Partial Lump Sum Distribution in an amount equal to 12, 24, or 36 monthly payments, which cannot exceed 75% of the member's deposits and interest.

At the December 31, 2016 valuation and measurement date, the following employees were covered by the benefit terms:

	2015	2016
Inactive Employees or Beneficiaries Currently Receiving Benefits	79	84
Inactive Employees Entitled to but Not Yet Receiving Benefits	138	155
Active employees	312	317
	529	556

**Contributions**

The contribution rates for employees in TMRS are either 5%, 6%, or 7% of employee gross earnings, and the City matching percentages are either 100%, 150%, or 200%, both as adopted by the governing body of the City. Under the state law governing TMRS, the contribution rate for each city is determined annually by the actuary, using the Entry Age Normal (EAN) actuarial cost method. The actuarially determined rate is the estimated amount necessary to finance the cost of benefits earned by employees during the year, with an additional amount to finance any unfunded accrued liability.

Employees for the City were required to contribute 7% of their annual gross earnings during the fiscal year. The contribution rates for the City were 15.94% and 15.87% in calendar years 2016 and 2017, respectively. The City's contributions to TMRS for the year ended September 30, 2017 were \$2,756,511 and were equal to the required contributions.

**Net Pension Liability**

The City's Net Pension Liability (NPL) was measured as of December 31, 2016, and the Total Pension Liability (TPL) used to calculate the Net Pension Liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 11 - RETIREMENT PLAN (Continued)

Texas Municipal Retirement System (Continued)

**Actuarial Assumptions**

The Total Pension Liability in the December 31, 2016 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Inflation	2.5% per year
Overall Payroll Growth	3.0% per year
Investment Rate of Return*	6.75%

\* Presented net of pension plan investment expense, including inflation

Salary increases were based on a service-related table. Mortality rates for active members, retirees, and beneficiaries were based on the gender-distinct RP2000 Combined Health Mortality Table, with male rates multiplied by 109% and female rates multiplied by 103%. The rates are projected on a fully generational basis by scale BB to account for future mortality improvements. For disabled annuitants, the gender-distinct RP2000 Disabled Retiree Mortality Tables with Blue Collar adjustment are used with males rates multiplied by 109% and female rates multiplied by 103% with a 3-year set-forward for both males and females. IN addition, a 3% minimum mortality rate is applied to reflect the impairment for younger members who become disabled. The rates are projected on a fully generational basis by scale BB to account for future mortality improvements subject to the 3% floor.

Actuarial assumptions used in the December 31, 2016 valuation were based on the results of actuarial experience studies. The experience study in TMRS was for the period December 31, 2010 through December 31, 2014. Healthy post-retirement mortality rates and annuity purchase rates were updated based on a Mortality Experience Investigation Study covering 2009 through 2011, and dated December 31, 2013. These assumptions were first used in the December 31, 2013 valuation, along with a change to the Entry Age Normal (EAN) actuarial cost method. Assumptions are reviewed annually. Plan assets are managed on a total return basis with an emphasis on both capital appreciation as well as the production of income, in order to satisfy the short-term and long-term funding needs of TMRS.

The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building-block method in which best estimate ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding the expected inflation. In determining their best estimate of a recommended investment return assumption under the various alternative asset allocation portfolios, GRS focused on the area between (1) arithmetic mean (aggressive).

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 11 - RETIREMENT PLAN (Continued)

Texas Municipal Retirement System (Continued)

**Actuarial Assumptions (Continued)**

The target allocation and best estimates of arithmetic real rates of return for each major asset class in fiscal year 2017 are summarized in the following table:

Asset Class	Target Allocation	Long-Term Expected Real Rate of Return (Arithmetic)
Domestic Equity	17.50%	4.55%
International Equity	17.50%	6.35%
Core Fixed Income	10.00%	1.00%
Non-Core Fixed Income	20.00%	4.15%
Real Return	10.00%	4.15%
Real Estate	10.00%	4.75%
Absolute Return	10.00%	4.00%
Private Equity	5.00%	7.75%
	<u>100.00%</u>	

**Discount Rate**

The discount rate used to measure the Total Pension Liability was 6.75%. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that employee and employer contributions will be made at the rates specified in statute. Based on that assumption, the pension plan's Fiduciary Net Position was projected to be available to make all projected future benefit payments of current active and inactive employees. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the Total Pension Liability.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 11 - RETIREMENT PLAN (Continued)

Texas Municipal Retirement System (Continued)

**Changes in the Net Pension Liability**

The below schedule presents the changes in the Net Pension Liability as of December 31, 2016:

	Total Pension Liability	Plan Fiduciary Net Position	Net Pension Liability
Balance at December 31, 2015	\$ 55,119,232	\$ 38,499,857	\$ 16,619,375
Changes for the year:			
Service Cost	2,855,745	-	2,855,745
Interest	3,763,562	-	3,763,562
Change of Benefit Terms	-	-	-
Difference Between Expected and Actual Experience	139,216	-	139,216
Changes of Assumptions	-	-	-
Contributions - Employer	-	2,627,335	(2,627,335)
Contributions - Employee	-	1,152,864	(1,152,864)
Net Investment Income	-	2,602,572	(2,602,572)
Benefit Payments, Including Refunds of Employee Contributions	(1,581,272)	(1,581,272)	-
Administrative Expense	-	(29,385)	29,385
Other Changes	-	(1,583)	1,583
Net Changes	<u>5,177,251</u>	<u>4,770,531</u>	<u>406,720</u>
Balance at December 31, 2016	<u>\$ 60,296,483</u>	<u>\$ 43,270,388</u>	<u>\$ 17,026,095</u>

The following presents the net pension liability of the City, calculated using the discount rate of 6.75%, as well as what the City's net pension liability would be if it were calculated using a discount rate that is 1-percentage point lower (5.75%) or 1-percentage point higher (7.75%) than the current rate:

	Discount Rate 5.75%	Discount Rate 6.75%	Discount Rate 7.75%
Net Pension Liability	\$ 27,443,427	\$ 17,026,095	\$ 8,668,647

**Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position**

Detailed information about the pension plan's Fiduciary Net Position is available in a separately-issued TMRS financial report. That report may be obtained on the Internet at [www.tmrs.com](http://www.tmrs.com).

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 11 - RETIREMENT PLAN (Continued)

Texas Municipal Retirement System (Continued)

**Pension Expense and Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions**

For the year ended September 30, 2017, the City recognized pension expense of \$3,512,360. Also as of September 30, 2017, the City reported deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between Expected and Actual Economic Experience	\$ 132,647	\$ -
Changes in Actuarial Assumptions	39,689	-
Differences Between Projected and Actual Investment Earnings	1,658,421	-
Contributions Subsequent to the Measurement Date	1,980,718	-
	\$ 3,811,475	\$ -

Deferred outflows of resources in the amount of \$1,980,718 is related to pensions resulting from contributions subsequent to the measurement date, and will be recognized as a reduction of the net pension liability for the plan year ending December 31, 2017. The City liquidates their Net Pension Liability through payments from the general fund. Other amounts reported as deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

For the Year ended December 31,	
2017	\$ 613,689
2018	613,689
2019	531,495
2020	45,274
2021	25,004
Thereafter	1,606
	\$ 1,830,757

C. Other Post-Employment Benefits

The City also participates in the cost sharing multiple-employer defined benefit group-term life insurance plan operated by TMRS known as Supplemental Death Benefits Fund (SDBF). The City elected, by ordinance, to provide group-term life insurance coverage to both current and retired employees. The City may terminate coverage under and discontinue participation in the SDBF by adopting an ordinance before November 1 of any year to be effective the following January 1.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 11 - RETIREMENT PLAN (Continued)

C. Other Post-Employment Benefits (Continued)

The death benefit for active employees provides a lump-sum payment approximately equal to the employee's annual salary (calculated based on the employee's actual earnings, for the 12-month period preceding the month of death); retired employees are insured for \$7,500; this coverage is an "other postemployment benefit," or OPEB.

The City contributes to the SDBF at a contractually required rate as determined by an annual actuarial valuation. The rate is equal to the cost of providing one-year term life insurance. The funding policy for the SDBF program is to assure that adequate resources are available to meet all death benefit payments for the upcoming year; the intent is not to pre-fund retiree life insurance during the employees' entire careers.

The City's contributions to the TMRS SDBF for the years ended 2017, 2016, and 2015 were \$22,066, \$20,324, and \$21,681, respectively, which equaled the required contributions each year.

NOTE 12 – RETIREE HEALTH INSURANCE PLAN

A. Plan Description

The City provides another post-employment benefit to eligible retirees of the City whereby they can stay on the City's health insurance plan by paying the full premium.

B. Contributions

The City's annual other post-employment benefits (OPEB) cost is calculated based on the annual required contribution (ARC) of the employer, an amount actuarially determined in accordance with the parameters of GASB Statement No. 45. The ARC represents a level of accrual that, if paid on an ongoing basis, is projected to cover the normal cost each year and to amortize any unfunded actuarial liabilities (or funding excesses) over a period not to exceed thirty years. The City's annual OPEB cost for the fiscal year ending September 30, 2017 is as follows:

Annual Required Contribution	\$ 139,515
Interest on OPEB obligation	17,912
Adjustment to ARC	<u>(21,183)</u>
Annual OPEB cost	136,244
Contributions	<u>(24,107)</u>
Increase in net OPEB obligation	112,137
Beginning Net OPEB Obligation	<u>543,618</u>
Ending Net OPEB Obligation	<u><u>\$ 655,755</u></u>

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 12 – RETIREE HEALTH INSURANCE PLAN (Continued)

B. Contributions (Continued)

The City's annual OPEB cost, the amount contributed by the employer, the percentage of annual OPEB cost contributed to the plan, and the net OPEB obligation for fiscal year ending September 30, 2017 and the preceding two fiscal years were as follows:

<u>September 30,</u>	<u>Cost</u>	<u>Contributions</u>	<u>Contributed</u>	<u>Obligation</u>
2017	\$ 136,244	\$ 24,107	17.7%	\$ 655,755
2016	136,557	23,519	17.2%	543,618
2015	81,159	15,485	19.1%	430,580

The Projected Unit Credit Cost Method is used to calculate the actuarial required contribution (ARC) for the City's retiree health care plan. Using the plan benefits, the present health premiums and a set of actuarial assumptions, the anticipated future payments are projected. The actuarial cost method then provides for a systematic funding for these anticipated payments. The yearly ARC is computed to cover the cost of benefits being earned by covered members as well as to amortize a portion of the unfunded accrued liability.

Projections of health benefits are based on the plan as understood by the City and include the types of benefits in force at the valuation date and the pattern of sharing benefit costs between the City and the City's employees to that point. Actuarial calculations reflect a long-term perspective and employ methods and assumptions that are designed to reduce short-term volatility in actuarial accrued liabilities and the actuarial value of assets. Significant methods and assumptions were as follows:

Inflation Rate	2.5%
Investment Rate of Return	4.0%, net of expenses
Actuarial Cost Method	Projected Unit of Credit
Amortization Method	Level as a percent of payroll
Amortization Period	30-year open period
Payroll Growth	3.0%
Medical Trend	Initial rate of 7.50%, declining to an ultimate rate of 4.25% after 15 years

Actuarial valuations involve estimates of the value of reported amounts and assumptions about the probability of events in the future. Amounts determined regarding the funded status and the annual required contributions of the City's retiree health care plan are subject to continual revision as actual results are compared to past expectations and new estimates are made about the future. The required schedule of funding progress presented as required supplementary information provides multiyear trend information that shows whether the actuarial value of plan assets is increasing or decreasing over time relative to the actuarial accrued liability for benefits.

The funded status as of December 31, 2015, the most recent actuarial valuation date, is as follows:

<u>Actuarial Valuation Date</u>	<u>Actuarial Value of Assets</u>	<u>Actuarial Accrued Liability (AAL)</u>	<u>Funded Ratio</u>	<u>Unfunded AAL (UAAL)</u>	<u>Covered Payroll</u>	<u>UAAL as a Percentage of Covered Payroll</u>
12/31/2015	\$ -	\$ 1,055,757	0.0%	\$ 1,055,757	\$ 14,356,845	7.4%



CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 13 - JOINT VENTURES

*Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation*

The Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation is a public, nonprofit corporation organized to aid, assist, and act on behalf of the cities of Schertz and Seguin in acquiring, constructing, maintaining, and operating a water utility system. The participating governments have an ongoing financial responsibility to fund the operation of the corporation through either purchase of services or by subsidizing the operations. Contributions to the corporation are reflected as “operating expenses” in the water and sewer fund and totaled \$2,242,314 for the year ended September 30, 2017. Separate financial statements for the Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation may be obtained from the City of Seguin, 210 East Gonzales Street, Seguin, Texas 78156.

The City of Schertz is jointly liable, together with the City of Seguin, for operating deficits and long-term debt of the Schertz/Seguin Local Government Corporation. Following is a summary of financial data as reported in the Corporation’s audited financial statements dated September 30, 2016:

<b>ASSETS:</b>	
Current Assets	\$ 14,027,427
Restricted Cash and Cash Equivalents	6,859,879
Property, Plant & Equipment (net)	95,187,724
Other Assets	108,809
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>116,183,839</u>
<b>Deferred Charges on Refunding</b>	<u>2,546,875</u>
<b>LIABILITIES:</b>	
Current Liabilities	4,858,647
Revenue Bonds (Less Current Maturities)	100,976,449
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>	<u>105,835,096</u>
<b>NET POSITION:</b>	
Net Investment in Capital Assets	(2,288,897)
Restricted	5,364,082
Unrestricted	9,820,433
<b>TOTAL NET POSITION</b>	<u>\$ 12,895,618</u>

The Corporation had net revenue bonds outstanding in the amount of \$103,281,449 (as of September 30, 2016) to provide funds to build, improve, extend, enlarge and repair the Corporation’s utility system, fund a reserve, and pay the costs of bond issuance. The bond resolution pledges intergovernmental contract revenues from the cities of Schertz and Seguin (the participating governments) to bond holders. Under the intergovernmental water supply contract, the participating governments are unconditionally obligated to pay their respective shares of annual contract revenue bond debt service from the operation of their respective utility systems.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 13 - JOINT VENTURES (Continued)

*Cibolo Valley Local Government Corporation*

The Cibolo Valley Local Government Corporation (CVLGC) is a public nonprofit corporation incorporated in March 2012 to assist and act on behalf of the cities of Schertz, and Cibolo to obtain additional water sources. The participating governments have an ongoing financial responsibility to fund the operation of the corporation through either purchase of services or by subsidizing the operations. Contributions to the corporation are reflected as “operating expenses” in the water and sewer fund. Separate financial statements for the CVLGC may be obtained from the City of Seguin, 210 East Gonzales Street, Seguin, Texas 78156.

The City of Schertz is jointly liable, together with the City of Cibolo, for operating deficits and long-term debt of CVLGC. Following is a summary of financial data as reported in the Corporation’s audited financial statements dated September 30, 2016:

<b>ASSETS:</b>	
Current Assets	\$ 613,204
Noncurrent Assets	1,268,516
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>1,881,720</u>
 <b>LIABILITIES:</b>	
Current Liabilities	<u>92,012</u>
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>	<u>92,012</u>
 <b>NET POSITION:</b>	
Net Investment in Capital Assets	1,268,516
Unrestricted	521,192
<b>TOTAL NET POSITION</b>	<u><u>\$ 1,789,708</u></u>

*Cibolo Creek Municipal Authority*

Cibolo Creek Municipal Authority (CCMA) provides sewage treatment for the area in and around the City. CCMA has agreed to construct a sewage treatment facility in the southern portion of the City to primarily serve citizens of the City but also neighboring Cities and future development. Because the City would be the primary customer at this time, the City agreed to enter into a regional wastewater treatment contract in September 2014. CCMA will issue bonds to finance the project and the City has agreed to make payments to CCMA to cover operation expenses, maintenance expenses, and debt service. The City is the sole member at this time, so it is responsible for 100% of the project costs. Should other members join, the City’s share of the costs would be reduced.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 13 - JOINT VENTURES (Continued)

*Cibolo Creek Municipal Authority (Continued)*

In September 2014, CCMA issued bonds for the project in the amount of \$6,950,000 with debt service requirements as follows:

Fiscal Year Ending September 30,	Principal	Interest	Total
2018	\$ 150,000	\$ 260,250	\$ 410,250
2019	155,000	257,250	412,250
2020	160,000	254,150	414,150
2021	160,000	250,950	410,950
2022	165,000	247,750	410,950
2023-2027	905,000	1,156,050	2,061,050
2028-2032	1,090,000	966,450	2,056,450
2033-2037	1,340,000	721,950	2,061,950
2038-2042	1,680,000	372,050	2,052,050
2043-2044	775,000	46,800	821,800
	<u>\$ 6,580,000</u>	<u>\$ 4,533,650</u>	<u>\$ 11,111,850</u>

NOTE 14 - COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

*Tax Increment Financing (the "Zone")*

The City is a principal in the City of Schertz Tax Increment Reinvestment Zone #2, pursuant to Chapter 311 of the Texas Tax Code. Under the terms of the Zone agreement, the City of Schertz, Bexar County, and San Antonio River Authority are funding infrastructure improvements through tax increment financing to the Sedona Development Project.

At the time the Zone was created, the property tax base was "frozen" and increment taxes resulting from the increases to property tax base are being used to finance Zone improvements. The total projected cost is a combined figure of \$45,000,000. Project costs of the developer will be funded up to 100% of the tax increment generated by the City of Schertz, Bexar County, and San Antonio River Authority (SARA). The City of Schertz (combined with SARA) have committed up to \$32,877,000 of the total \$45,000,000. The Zone has a statutory termination date of December 31, 2027. The TIRZ has collected \$949,976 from taxing entities (net of administrative reimbursements) and remitted \$771,928 to the developer as of September 30, 2017.

*380 Agreements*

The Chapter 380 Incentive program, authorized by Chapter 380 of the Texas Local Government Code, enables the City of Schertz to provide grants or reimbursements from the City's general fund. To become eligible for Chapter 380 Incentives, projects must: create at least of \$100 million in new real and personal property; or generate at least \$35 million in gross sales that is subject to the collection of local sales and use tax. Businesses that have a 380 Incentive agreement with the City are eligible to receive a reimbursement of taxes paid for the year if they have met the requirements outlined in the agreement by a certain date each year. For the fiscal year ended September 30, 2017, the City reimbursed \$965,674 in property taxes paid.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
 NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
 SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 14 - COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES (Continued)

*Economic Development Incentive Agreements*

The City of Schertz Economic Development Corporation (the SEDC) negotiates economic development incentive agreement on behalf of the SEDC and the City of Schertz (the City) on an individual basis. As of September 30, 2017, the City had nine active incentive agreements.

On May 2, 2017, the City and the Corporation approved the Schertz Incentive Policy which outlines the City's primary tools to attract commercial investment and promote economic development. Projects are selected on a case-by-case basis in accordance current policy and state laws at the discretion of the governing body. All incentive agreements are formalized through a performance agreement with specified terms and recapture criteria.

The SEDC Incentive program, authorized by Chapters 501, 502 and 505 of the Texas Local Government Code, enables the Corporation to fund allowable projects from the collection of one-half of one percent of sales tax proceeds collected in the City of Schertz. In accordance with state law, the SEDC Incentive Policy establishes grants and loans for businesses that create Primary Jobs for the following categories: Existing Businesses (3 years of operation within City), Small Businesses (fewer than 50 full-time jobs or annual sales less than \$10 million), Large Impact Businesses (Up to \$100 million in taxable property), and Extra Large Businesses (over \$100 million in taxable property).

The City and Corporation's outstanding incentive agreement grants are as follows:

	FY 2016-17 Amt.	Est. Remaining Grant
City of Schertz - LGC 380.001	\$ 965,674	\$ 2,736,572
SEDC - LGC 501.101	-	451,552

*Service Concession Arrangements*

The City entered into an agreement with YMCA, under which YMCA will operate and collect user fees from the Natatorium and Outdoor Pools for the next 20 years. YMCA will pay the city \$100,000 annually over the course of the arrangement; the present value of these installment payments is estimated to be \$851,356. The City will approve the rates and services that YMCA will provide, however, YMCA will retain all revenues earned from the operation of the Natatorium. The YMCA will remit all revenues received from operating the Outdoor Pools to the City with the exception of revenues earned from YMCA specific programs. As of September 30, 2017, the Natatorium is still under construction and is reported by the City as Construction in Progress in the amount of \$9,801,311. The City reports the Outdoor Pools and related equipment as capital assets with a total carrying amount of \$778,529. The City reports a receivable and deferred inflow of resources in the amount of \$851,356 on the government-wide statements at year-end pursuant to the service concession arrangement. Additionally, a liability of \$507,136 for the present value of maintenance costs estimated over the life of the Service Concession arrangement.

*Litigation*

The City is the subject of various claims and litigation that have arisen in the course of its operations. Management is of the opinion that the City's liability in these cases, if decided adversely to the City, will not have a material effect on the City's financial position.

CITY OF SCHERTZ, TEXAS  
NOTES TO BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (CONTINUED)  
SEPTEMBER 30, 2017

NOTE 14 - COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES (Continued)

*Construction Commitments*

The City of Schertz has entered into commitments for various projects as follows:

<i>Primary Government:</i>	<u>Estimated Project Cost to City</u>	<u>Expended to Date</u>	<u>Estimated Future Commitment</u>
<b>Governmental Activities:</b>			
Lower Seguin Road Improvements	\$ 304,841	\$ 263,598	\$ 41,243
Natorium Project	9,812,363	9,812,363	-
FM 78 and Main Street	1,000,000	7,513	992,487
Fire Station 3	8,000,000	435,007	7,564,993
FM 1103 Street Improvements	2,000,000	181,226	1,818,774
Building Improvements	1,600,000	30,364	1,569,636
Main Street Improvements	407,057	-	407,057
FM 1518 Street Improvements	<u>5,000,000</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>5,000,000</u>
Total Governmental Commitments	<u>28,124,261</u>	<u>10,730,071</u>	<u>17,394,190</u>
<b>Business-Type Activities:</b>			
Woman Hollering WasteWater	5,940,424	504,684	5,435,740
Town Creek Sewer Project (Phase III)	931,740	931,740	-
Corbett Ground Storage Tank & Pumps	1,650,000	930	1,649,070
Corbett Elevated Water Tank	2,982,052	286,563	2,695,489
Trainer Hale Road Distribution Main	<u>500,000</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>500,000</u>
Total Business-Type Activities	<u>12,004,216</u>	<u>1,723,917</u>	<u>10,280,299</u>
 Total Estimated Future Commitments	 <u>\$ 40,128,477</u>	 <u>\$ 12,453,988</u>	 <u>\$ 27,674,489</u>

*Risk Management*

The City is exposed to various risks of loss related to torts; theft of, damage to, and destruction of assets; errors and omissions; and natural disasters. The City contracts with the Texas Municipal League Intergovernmental Risk Pool, a public entity risk pool currently operating as a common risk management and insurance program providing insurance coverage in the following areas: general liability, automobile liability and physical damage, law enforcement liability, worker's compensation, real and personal property, mobile equipment, and errors and omissions liability. TML is a multi-employer group that provides for a combination of risk sharing among pool participants and stop loss coverage. Contributions are set annually by the provider. Liability by the City is generally limited to the contributed amounts. Annual contributions for the year ended September 30, 2017 were \$435,914 for property and casualty and workers compensation coverage. There were no significant increases or decreases in coverage from fiscal year 2016.

(this page intentionally left blank)



Financial Advisory Services  
Provided By:

**SAMCO CAPITAL MARKETS, INC.**